

# TEI Schema for MULTEXT-East Version 4 Language Resources

*Tomaž Erjavec, tomaz.erjavec@ijs.si*

*2010-05-01*

## 1 MULTEXT-East V4

This TEI customization file includes modules for multilingual morphosyntactically annotated corpora and specifications of the MULTEXT-East project, <http://nl.ijs.si/ME/>, in particular Version 4 of the resources.

## 2 Macros

---

**macro.limitedContent** (paragraph content) defines the content of prose elements that are not used for transcription of extant materials.

*Module* tei

*Used by* «desc» «fDescr» «figDesc» «fsDescr» «meeting» «rendition» «tagUsage»

*Declaration*

```
macro.limitedContent = ( text | model.limitedPhrase | model.inter ) *
```

---

**macro.paraContent** (paragraph content) defines the content of paragraphs and similar elements.

*Module* tei

*Used by* «ab» «add» «cell» «corr» «del» «docEdition» «emph» «head» «hi» «l» «orig» «p» «ref» «reg» «seg» «sic» «title» «titlePart» «unclear»

*Declaration*

```
macro.paraContent =  
  ( text | model.gLike | model.phrase | model.inter | model.global ) *
```

---

**macro.phraseSeq** (phrase sequence) defines a sequence of character data and phrase-level elements.

*Module* tei

*Used by* «abbr» «addrLine» «author» «biblScope» «dateline» «distinct» «distributor» «docAuthor» «docDate» «edition» «editor» «email» «expan» «extent» «foreign» «geoDecl» «gloss» «headItem» «headLabel» «label» «measure» «mentioned» «name» «num» «phr» «pubPlace» «publisher» «rs» «salute» «signed» «soCalled» «speaker» «street» «term» «trailer»

*Declaration*

```
macro.phraseSeq = ( text | model.gLike | model.phrase | model.global ) *
```

---

**macro.phraseSeq.limited** (limited phrase sequence) defines a sequence of character data and those phrase-level elements that are not typically used for transcribing extant documents.

*Module* tei

*Used by* «authority» «classCode» «creation» «funder» «language» «principal» «resp» «span» «sponsor»

*Declaration*

```
macro.phraseSeq.limited = ( text | model.limitedPhrase | model.global )*
```

---

**macro.specialPara** ('special' paragraph content) defines the content model of elements such as notes or list items, which either contain a series of component-level elements or else have the same structure as a paragraph, containing a series of phrase-level and inter-level elements.

*Module* tei

*Used by* «item» «note» «q» «quote» «said» «stage»

*Declaration*

```
macro.specialPara =  
(  
  text  
  | model.gLike      | model.phrase      | model.inter      | model.divPart      | mode
```

---

**macro.xtext** (extended text) defines a sequence of character data and gaiji elements.

*Module* tei

*Used by* «c» «string»

*Declaration*

```
macro.xtext = ( text | model.gLike )*
```

---

### 3 Model classes

---

**model.addrPart** groups elements such as names or postal codes which may appear as part of a postal address.

*Module* tei

*Used by* «address»

*Members* «model.nameLike» [«model.nameLike.agent» [«name»] «rs»] «addrLine» «postBox» «postCode» «street»

---

**model.addressLike** groups elements used to represent a postal or e-mail address.

*Module* tei

*Used by* «model.pPart.data»

*Members* «address» «email»

---

**model.applicationLike** groups elements used to record application-specific information about a document in its header.

*Module* header

*Used by* «appInfo»

*Members* «application»

---

**model.biblLike** groups elements containing a bibliographic description.

*Module* tei

*Used by* «cit» «listBib» «relatedItem» «sourceDesc» «taxonomy» «model.inter»

*Members* «bibl» «biblFull» «biblStruct»

---

**model.biblPart** groups elements which represent components of a bibliographic description.

*Module* tei

*Used by* «bibl»

*Members* «model.imprintPart» [«biblScope» «distributor» «pubPlace» «publisher»]  
«model.respLike» [«author» «editor» «funder» «meeting» «principal» «respStmt»  
«sponsor»] «edition» «extent» «idno» «relatedItem» «series»

---

**model.choicePart** groups elements (other than <choice> itself) which can be used within a <choice> alternation.

*Module* tei

*Used by* «choice»

*Members* «abbr» «corr» «expan» «orig» «reg» «seg» «sic» «unclear»

---

**model.common** groups common chunk- and inter-level elements.

*Module* tei

*Used by* «body» «div» «epigraph» «postscript»

*Members* «model.divPart» [«model.ILike» [«l»] «model.pLike» [«ab» «p»] «lg» «sp»]  
«model.inter» [«model.biblLike» [«bibl» «biblFull» «biblStruct»] «model.egLike»  
«model.labelLike» [«desc» «label»] «model.listLike» [«list» «listBib»] «model.qLike»  
[«model.quoteLike» [«cit» «quote»] «q» «said»] «model.stageLike» [«stage»] «table»]

*Note* This class defines the set of chunk- and inter-level elements; it is used in many content models, including those for textual divisions.

---

**model.dateLike** groups elements containing temporal expressions.

*Module* tei

*Used by* «imprint» «model.pPart.data»

*Members* «date» «time»

---

**model.divBottom** groups elements appearing at the end of a text division.

*Module* tei

*Used by* «body» «div» «group» «lg» «list»

---

*Members* «model.divBottomPart» [«closer» «postscript» «signed» «trailer»] «model.divWrapper»  
[«byline» «dateline» «docAuthor» «docDate» «epigraph» «meeting» «salute»]

---

**model.divBottomPart** groups elements which can occur only at the end of a text division.

*Module* tei

*Used by* «back» «front» «model.divBottom»

*Members* «closer» «postscript» «signed» «trailer»

---

**model.divGenLike** groups elements used to represent a structural division which is generated rather than explicitly present in the source.

*Module* tei

*Used by* «body» «div»

*Members* «divGen»

---

**model.divLike** groups elements used to represent un-numbered generic structural divisions.

*Module* tei

*Used by* «back» «body» «div» «front»

*Members* «div»

---

**model.divPart** groups paragraph-level elements appearing directly within divisions.

*Module* tei

*Used by* «macro.specialPara» «model.common»

*Members* «model.ILike» [«l»] «model.pLike» [«ab» «p»] «lg» «sp»

*Note* Note that this element class does not include members of the `model.inter` class, which can appear either within or between paragraph-level items.

---

**model.divTop** groups elements appearing at the beginning of a text division.

*Module* tei

*Used by* «body» «div» «group» «lg» «list»

*Members* «model.divTopPart» [«model.headLike» [«head»] «opener»] «model.divWrapper»  
[«byline» «dateline» «docAuthor» «docDate» «epigraph» «meeting» «salute»]

---

**model.divTopPart** groups elements which can occur only at the beginning of a text division.

*Module* tei

*Used by* «model.divTop»

*Members* «model.headLike» [«head»] «opener»

---

**model.divWrapper** groups elements which can appear at either top or bottom of a textual division.

*Module* tei

*Used by* «model.divTop» «model.divBottom»

*Members* «byline» «dateline» «docAuthor» «docDate» «epigraph» «meeting» «salute»

---

**model.editorialDeclPart** groups elements which may be used inside <editorialDecl> and appear multiple times.

*Module* header

*Used by* «editorialDecl»

*Members* «correction» «hyphenation» «interpretation» «normalization» «quotation» «segmentation» «stdVals»

---

**model.emphLike** groups phrase-level elements which are typographically distinct and to which a specific function can be attributed.

*Module* tei

*Used by* «model.highlighted» «model.limitedPhrase»

*Members* «distinct» «emph» «foreign» «gloss» «mentioned» «soCalled» «term» «title»

---

**model.encodingDescPart** groups elements which may be used inside <encodingDesc> and appear multiple times.

*Module* header

*Used by* «encodingDesc»

*Members* «appInfo» «classDecl» «editorialDecl» «fsdDecl» «geoDecl» «projectDesc» «refsDecl» «samplingDecl» «tagsDecl»

---

**model.entryPart.top** groups high level elements within a structured dictionary entry

*Module* tei

*Used by* —

*Members* «cit»

*Note* Members of this class typically contain related parts of a dictionary entry which form a coherent subdivision, for example a particular sense, homonym, etc.

---

**model.featureVal** groups elements which represent feature values in feature structures.

*Module* tei

*Used by* «f» «fvLib» «vAlt» «vLabel» «vRange»

*Members* «model.featureVal.complex» [«fs» «vColl»] «model.featureVal.single» [«numeric» «string» «symbol» «vAlt» «vLabel»]

---

**model.featureVal.complex** groups elements which express complex feature values in feature structures.

*Module* tei

*Used by* «model.featureVal»

*Members* «fs» «vColl»

---

**model.featureVal.single** group elements used to represent atomic feature values in feature structures.

*Module* tei

*Used by* «vColl»«model.featureVal»

*Members* «numeric» «string» «symbol» «vAlt» «vLabel»

---

**model.frontPart** groups elements which appear at the level of divisions within front or back matter.

*Module* tei

*Used by* «back» «front»

*Members* «divGen» «titlePage»

---

**model.global** groups elements which may appear at any point within a TEI text.

*Module* tei

*Used by* «address» «back» «bibl» «body» «byline» «change» «cit» «closer» «date» «div» «docImprint» «docTitle» «epigraph» «figure» «front» «group» «imprint» «lg» «list» «m» «opener» «postscript» «s» «series» «sp» «table» «text» «time» «titlePage» «w»«macro.paraContent» «macro.phraseSeq» «macro.phraseSeq.limited» «macro.specialPara»

*Members* «model.global.edit» [«gap»] «model.global.meta» [«alt» «altGrp» «fLib» «fs» «fvLib» «join» «joinGrp» «link» «linkGrp» «span» «timeline»] «model.milestoneLike» [«anchor» «cb» «lb» «milestone» «pb»] «model.noteLike» [«note»] «figure»

---

**model.global.edit** groups globally available elements which perform a specifically editorial function.

*Module* tei

*Used by* «model.global»

*Members* «gap»

---

**model.global.meta** groups globally available elements which describe the status of other elements.

*Module* tei

*Used by* «model.global»

*Members* «alt» «altGrp» «fLib» «fs» «fvLib» «join» «joinGrp» «link» «linkGrp» «span» «timeline»

*Note* Elements in this class are typically used to hold groups of links or of abstract interpretations, or by provide indications of certainty etc. It may find be convenient to localize all metadata elements, for example to contain them within the same division as the elements that they

relate to; or to locate them all to a division of their own. They may however appear at any point in a TEI text.

---

**model.glossLike** groups elements which provide an alternative name, explanation, or description for any markup construct.

*Module* tei

*Used by* «category» «gap» «join» «joinGrp» «taxonomy»

*Members* «desc» «gloss»

---

**model.graphicLike** groups elements containing images, formulae, and similar objects.

*Module* tei

*Used by* «figure» «formula»«model.phrase»

*Members* «binaryObject» «formula» «graphic»

---

**model.headLike** groups elements used to provide a title or heading at the start of a text division.

*Module* tei

*Used by* «divGen» «figure» «listBibl» «table»«model.divTopPart»

*Members* «head»

---

**model.hiLike** groups phrase-level elements which are typographically distinct but to which no specific function can be attributed.

*Module* tei

*Used by* «w»«model.highlighted»

*Members* «hi»

---

**model.highlighted** groups phrase-level elements which are typographically distinct.

*Module* tei

*Used by* «bibl»«model.phrase»

*Members* «model.emphLike» [«distinct» «emph» «foreign» «gloss» «mentioned» «soCalled» «term» «title»] «model.hiLike» [«hi»]

---

**model.imprintPart** groups the bibliographic elements which occur inside imprints.

*Module* tei

*Used by* «imprint»«model.biblPart»

*Members* «biblScope» «distributor» «pubPlace» «publisher»

---

**model.inter** groups elements which can appear either within or between paragraph-like elements.

*Module* tei

*Used by* «change»«macro.limitedContent» «macro.paraContent»  
«macro.specialPara»«model.common»

*Members* «model.biblLike» [«bibl» «biblFull» «biblStruct»] «model.egLike» «model.labelLike»  
[«desc» «label»] «model.listLike» [«list» «listBibl»] «model.qLike» [«model.quoteLike»  
[«cit» «quote»] «q» «said»] «model.stageLike» [«stage»] «table»

---

**model.lLike** groups elements representing metrical components such as verse lines.

*Module* tei

*Used by* «lg» «sp»«model.divPart»

*Members* «l»

---

**model.labelLike** groups elements used to gloss or explain other parts of a document.

*Module* tei

*Used by* «application»«model.inter»

*Members* «desc» «label»

---

**model.limitedPhrase** groups phrase-level elements excluding those elements primarily intended for transcription of existing sources.

*Module* tei

*Used by* «catDesc» «change»«macro.limitedContent» «macro.phraseSeq.limited»

*Members* «model.emphLike» [«distinct» «emph» «foreign» «gloss» «mentioned» «soCalled»  
«term» «title»] «model.pPart.data» [«model.addressLike» [«address» «email»]  
«model.dateLike» [«date» «time»] «model.measureLike» [«measure» «measureGrp»  
«num»] «model.nameLike» [«model.nameLike.agent» [«name»] «rs»] ]  
«model.pPart.editorial» [«abbr» «choice» «expan»] «model.ptrLike» [«ptr» «ref»]

---

**model.listLike** groups list-like elements.

*Module* tei

*Used by* «sourceDesc»«model.inter»

*Members* «list» «listBibl»

---

**model.measureLike** groups elements which denote a number, a quantity, a measurement, or similar piece of text that conveys some numerical meaning.

*Module* tei

*Used by* «measureGrp»«model.pPart.data»

*Members* «measure» «measureGrp» «num»

---

**model.milestoneLike** groups milestone-style elements used to represent reference systems.

*Module* tei

*Used by* «listBibl»«model.global»

*Members* «anchor» «cb» «lb» «milestone» «pb»

---



**model.msItemPart** groups elements which can appear within a manuscript item description.

*Module* tei

*Used by* —

*Members* «model.msQuoteLike» [«title»] «model.quoteLike» [«cit» «quote»] «model.respLike» [«author» «editor» «funder» «meeting» «principal» «respStmt» «sponsor»] «bibl» «listBibl»

---

**model.msQuoteLike** groups elements which represent passages such as titles quoted from a manuscript as a part of its description.

*Module* tei

*Used by* «model.msItemPart»

*Members* «title»

---

**model.nameLike** groups elements which name or refer to a person, place, or organization.

*Module* tei

*Used by* «model.addrPart» «model.pPart.data»

*Members* «model.nameLike.agent» [«name»] «rs»

*Note* A superset of the naming elements that may appear in datelines, addresses, statements of responsibility, etc.

---

**model.nameLike.agent** groups elements which contain names of individuals or corporate bodies.

*Module* tei

*Used by* «respStmt»«model.nameLike»

*Members* «name»

*Note* This class is used in the content model of elements which reference names of people or organizations.

---

**model.noteLike** groups globally-available note-like elements.

*Module* tei

*Used by* «biblStruct» «monogr» «notesStmt»«model.global»

*Members* «note»

---

**model.pLike** groups paragraph-like elements.

*Module* tei

*Used by* «application» «availability» «cRefPattern» «correction» «editionStmt» «editorialDecl» «encodingDesc» «figure» «hyphenation» «interpretation» «normalization» «particDesc» «projectDesc» «publicationStmt» «quotation» «refsDecl» «samplingDecl» «segmentation» «seriesStmt» «sourceDesc» «sp» «stdVals»«model.divPart»

*Members* «ab» «p»

---

**model.pLike.front** groups paragraph-like elements which can occur as direct constituents of front matter.

*Module* tei

*Used by* «back» «front»

*Members* «byline» «docAuthor» «docDate» «docEdition» «docImprint» «docTitle» «epigraph» «head» «titlePart»

---

**model.pPart.data** groups phrase-level elements containing names, dates, numbers, measures, and similar data.

*Module* tei

*Used by* «bibl» «model.phrase» «model.limitedPhrase»

*Members* «model.addressLike» [«address» «email»] «model.dateLike» [«date» «time»] «model.measureLike» [«measure» «measureGrp» «num»] «model.nameLike» [«model.nameLike.agent» [«name»] «rs»]

---

**model.pPart.edit** groups phrase-level elements for simple editorial correction and transcription.

*Module* tei

*Used by* «bibl» «w» «model.phrase»

*Members* «model.pPart.editorial» [«abbr» «choice» «expan»] «model.pPart.transcriptional» [«add» «corr» «del» «orig» «reg» «sic» «unclear»]

---

**model.pPart.editorial** groups phrase-level elements for simple editorial interventions that may be useful both in transcribing and in authoring.

*Module* tei

*Used by* «model.pPart.edit» «model.limitedPhrase»

*Members* «abbr» «choice» «expan»

---

**model.pPart.transcriptional** groups phrase-level elements used for editorial transcription of pre-existing source materials.

*Module* tei

*Used by* «model.pPart.edit»

*Members* «add» «corr» «del» «orig» «reg» «sic» «unclear»

---

**model.personPart** groups elements which form part of the description of a person.

*Module* tei

*Used by* —

*Members* «bibl»

---

**model.phrase** groups elements which can occur at the level of individual words or phrases.

*Module* tei

*Used by* «byline» «closer» «date» «docImprint» «opener» «s» «time» «macro.paraContent»  
«macro.phraseSeq» «macro.specialPara»

*Members* «model.graphicLike» [«binaryObject» «formula» «graphic»] «model.highlighted»  
[«model.emphLike» [«distinct» «emph» «foreign» «gloss» «mentioned» «soCalled» «term»  
«title»] «model.hiLike» [«hi»] ] «model.lPart» «model.pPart.data» [«model.addressLike»  
[«address» «email»] «model.dateLike» [«date» «time»] «model.measureLike» [«measure»  
«measureGrp» «num»] «model.nameLike» [«model.nameLike.agent» [«name»] «rs»] ]  
«model.pPart.edit» [«model.pPart.editorial» [«abbr» «choice» «expan»]  
«model.pPart.transcriptional» [«add» «corr» «del» «orig» «reg» «sic» «unclear»] ]  
«model.ptrLike» [«ptr» «ref»] «model.segLike» [«S» «ana» «c» «m» «pc» «phr» «s» «seg»  
«tok» «w»]

*Note* This class of elements can occur only within larger elements of the class *inter* or *chunk*. In prose, this means these elements can occur within paragraphs, list items, lines of verse, etc.

---

**model.profileDescPart** groups elements which may be used inside <profileDesc> and appear multiple times.

*Module* header

*Used by* «profileDesc»

*Members* «langUsage» «particDesc» «textClass»

---

**model.ptrLike** groups elements used for purposes of location and reference.

*Module* tei

*Used by* «application» «bibl» «cit» «relatedItem» «model.phrase» «model.limitedPhrase»

*Members* «ptr» «ref»

---

**model.publicationStmtPart** groups elements which may appear within the <publicationStmt> element of the TEI Header.

*Module* tei

*Used by* «publicationStmt»

*Members* «address» «authority» «availability» «date» «distributor» «idno» «pubPlace»  
«publisher»

---

**model.qLike** groups elements related to highlighting which can appear either within or between chunk-level elements.

*Module* tei

*Used by* «cit» «sp» «model.inter»

*Members* «model.quoteLike» [«cit» «quote»] «q» «said»

---

**model.quoteLike** groups elements used to directly contain quotations.

*Module* tei

*Used by* «model.qLike» «model.msItemPart»

*Members* «cit» «quote»

---

**model.resourceLike** groups non-textual elements which may appear together with a header and a text to constitute a TEI document.

*Module* tei

*Used by* «TEI»

*Members* «fsdDecl»

---

**model.respLike** groups elements which are used to indicate intellectual or other significant responsibility, for example within a bibliographic element.

*Module* tei

*Used by* «titleStmt» «model.biblPart» «model.msItemPart»

*Members* «author» «editor» «funder» «meeting» «principal» «respStmt» «sponsor»

---

**model.segLike** groups elements used for arbitrary segmentation.

*Module* tei

*Used by* «bibl» «model.phrase»

*Members* «S» «ana» «c» «m» «pc» «phr» «s» «seg» «tok» «w»

*Note* The principles on which segmentation is carried out, and any special codes or attribute values used, should be defined explicitly in the <segmentation> element of the <encodingDesc> within the associated TEI header.

---

**model.stageLike** groups elements containing stage directions or similar things defined by the module for performance texts.

*Module* tei

*Used by* «sp» «model.inter»

*Members* «stage»

*Note* Stage directions are members of class *inter*: that is, they can appear between or within component-level elements.

---

**model.teiHeaderPart** groups high level elements which may appear more than once in a TEI Header.

*Module* header

*Used by* «teiHeader»

*Members* «encodingDesc» «profileDesc»

---

**model.titlepagePart** groups elements which can occur as direct constituents of a title page, such as <docTitle>, <docAuthor>, <docImprint>, or <epigraph>.

*Module* tei

*Used by* «titlePage»

---

*Members* «binaryObject» «byline» «docAuthor» «docDate» «docEdition» «docImprint»  
«docTitle» «epigraph» «graphic» «titlePart»

## 4 Attribute classes

---

**att.ascribed** provides attributes for elements representing speech or action that can be ascribed to a specific individual.

*Module* tei

*Members* «change» «q» «said» «sp»

*Attributes* In addition to global attributes

**@who** indicates the person, or group of people, to whom the element content is ascribed.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1–∞ occurrences of `xsd:anyURI` separated by whitespace

*Values* For transcribed speech, this will typically identify a participant or participant group; in other contexts, it will point to any identified <person> element.

---

**att.canonical** provides attributes which can be used to associate a representation such as a name or title with canonical information about the object being named or referenced.

*Module* tei

*Members* «att.naming» [«author» «editor» «name» «pubPlace» «rs»] «docAuthor» «docTitle»  
«resp» «term» «title»

*Attributes* In addition to global attributes

**@key** provides an externally-defined means of identifying the entity (or entities) being named, using a coded value of some kind.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `string`

*Values* any string of Unicode characters

*Note* The value may be a unique identifier from a database, or any other externally-defined string identifying the referent.

**@ref** (reference) provides an explicit means of locating a full definition for the entity being named by means of one or more URIs.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1–∞ occurrences of `xsd:anyURI` separated by whitespace

*Note* The value must point directly to one or more XML elements by means of one or more URIs, separated by whitespace. If more than one is supplied, the implication is that the name identifies several distinct entities.

---

**att.dateable** provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain dates, times, or dateable events.

*Module* tei

*Members* «application» «change» «date» «time»

*Attributes* «att.dateable.w3c» (*@period*, *@when*, *@notBefore*, *@notAfter*, *@from*, *@to*)

*Note* This ‘superclass’ provides attributes that can be used to provide normalized values of temporal information. By default, the attributes from the `att.dateable.w3c` class are provided. If the module for names & dates is loaded, this class also provides attributes from the `att.dateable.iso` class. In general, the possible values of attributes restricted to the W3C datatypes form a subset of those values available via the ISO 8601 standard. However, the greater expressiveness of the ISO datatypes may not be needed, and there exists much greater software support for the W3C datatypes.

---

**att.dateable.w3c** provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain dateable events using the W3C datatypes.

*Module* `tei`

*Members* `<att.dateable>` [`<<application>>` `<<change>>` `<<date>>` `<<time>>`]

*Attributes* In addition to global attributes

**@period** supplies a pointer to some location defining a named period of time within which the dateable item is understood to have occurred.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `xsd:anyURI`

**@when** supplies the value of the date or time in a standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype*

```
xsd:date
| xsd:gYear
| xsd:gMonth
| xsd:gDay
| xsd:gYearMonth
| xsd:gMonthDay
| xsd:time
| xsd:dateTime
```

*Values* A normalized form of temporal expression conforming to the W3C *XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition*.

Examples of W3C date, time, and date & time formats.

```
<date
  when="1945-10-24"   xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"
xmlns:ns147="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">24 Oct 45</date>
<date
  when="1996-09-24T07:25:00Z">September 24th, 1996 at 3:25 in the
morning</date>
<time
  when="1999-01-04T20:42:00-05:00">Jan 4 1999 at 8 pm</time>
<time
  when="14:12:38">fourteen twelve and 38 seconds</time>
<date
  when="1962-10">October of 1962</date>
<date
  when="-06-12">June 12th</date>
<date
  when="--01">the first of the month</date>
<date
  when="-08">August</date>
<date
  when="2006">MMVI</date>
```

```
<date
  when="0056">AD 56</date>
<date
  when="-0056">56 BC</date>
```

This list begins in the year 1632, more precisely on Trinity Sunday, i.e. the Sunday after Pentecost, in that year the **<date** calendar="Julian" when="1632-06-06" xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns147="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">27th of May (old style)</date>.

```
<opener  xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"
xmlns:ns147="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <dateline>
    <placeName>Dorchester, Village,</placeName>
    <date
      when="1828-03-02">March 2d. 1828.</date>
  </dateline>
  <salute>To
    Mrs. Cornell,</salute> Sunday <time
      when="12:00:00">noon.</time>
</opener>
```

*Note* The value of the **when** attribute should be the normalized representation of the date, time, or combined date & time intended, in any of the standard formats specified by *XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition*, using the Gregorian calendar. The most commonly-encountered format for the date part of the **when** attribute is yyyy-mm-dd, but yyyy, -mm, --dd, yyyy-mm, or -mm-dd may also be used. For the time part, the form hh:mm:ss is used. Note that this format does not currently permit use of the value **0000** to represent the year 1 BCE; instead the value **-0001** should be used.

**@notBefore** specifies the earliest possible date for the event in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype*

```
xsd:date
|  xsd:gYear
|  xsd:gMonth
|  xsd:gDay
|  xsd:gYearMonth
|  xsd:gMonthDay
|  xsd:time
|  xsd:dateTime
```

*Values* A normalized form of temporal expression conforming to the W3C *XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition*.

**@notAfter** specifies the latest possible date for the event in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype*

```
xsd:date
|  xsd:gYear
|  xsd:gMonth
|  xsd:gDay
```

xsd:gYearMonth
xsd:gMonthDay
xsd:time
xsd:dateTime

*Values* A normalized form of temporal expression conforming to the W3C  
*XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition*.

**@from** indicates the starting point of the period in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype*

xsd:date
xsd:gYear
xsd:gMonth
xsd:gDay
xsd:gYearMonth
xsd:gMonthDay
xsd:time
xsd:dateTime

*Values* A normalized form of temporal expression conforming to the W3C  
*XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition*.

**@to** indicates the ending point of the period in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype*

xsd:date
xsd:gYear
xsd:gMonth
xsd:gDay
xsd:gYearMonth
xsd:gMonthDay
xsd:time
xsd:dateTime

*Values* A normalized form of temporal expression conforming to the W3C  
*XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition*.

---

**att.declarable** provides attributes for those elements in the TEI Header which may be independently selected by means of the special purpose **decls** attribute.

*Module* tei

*Members* «availability» «bibl» «biblFull» «biblStruct» «correction» «editorialDecl» «geoDecl» «hyphenation» «interpretation» «langUsage» «listBibl» «normalization» «particDesc» «projectDesc» «quotation» «refsDecl» «samplingDecl» «segmentation» «sourceDesc» «stdVals» «textClass»

*Attributes* In addition to global attributes

**@default** indicates whether or not this element is selected by default when its parent is selected.

*Status* Mandatory when applicable

*Datatype*

xsd:boolean
-------------

*Legal values are:* **true** This element is selected if its parent is selected

**false** This element can only be selected explicitly, unless it is the only one



of its kind, in which case it is selected if its parent is selected.  
[Default]

*Note* The rules governing the association of declarable elements with individual parts of a TEI text are fully defined in chapter «CCAS». Only one element of a particular type may have a **default** attribute with a value of **true**.

---

**att.declaring** provides attributes for elements which may be independently associated with a particular declarable element within the header, thus overriding the inherited default for that element.

*Module* tei

*Members* «ab» «back» «body» «div» «front» «gloss» «graphic» «group» «lg» «p» «ptr» «ref» «term» «text»

*Attributes* In addition to global attributes

**@decls** identifies one or more *declarable elements* within the header, which are understood to apply to the element bearing this attribute and its content.

*Status* Mandatory when applicable

*Datatype* 1–∞ occurrences of `xsd:anyURI` separated by whitespace

*Values* must identify a set of declarable elements of different types.

*Note* The rules governing the association of declarable elements with individual parts of a TEI text are fully defined in chapter «CCAS».

---

**att.dimensions** provides attributes for describing the size of physical objects.

*Module* tei

*Members* «att.editLike» [«att.transcriptional» [«add» «del»] «corr» «date» «expan» «gap» «reg» «time» «unclear»]

*Attributes* «att.ranging» (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max)

**@unit** names the unit used for the measurement

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `xsd:Name`

*Suggested values include:* **cm** (centimetres)

**mm** (millimetres)

**in** (inches)

**lines** lines of text

**chars** (characters) characters of text

**@quantity** specifies the length in the units specified

*Status* Optional

*Datatype*

`xsd:double | token { pattern = "(\\-?[\\d]+/\\-?[\\d]+)" } | xsd:decimal`

**@extent** indicates the size of the object concerned using a project-specific vocabulary combining quantity and units in a single string of words.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1–∞ occurrences

of `token { pattern = "(\\p{L}|\\p{N}|\\p{P}|\\p{S})+" }` separated by whitespace

*Values* any measurement phrase, e.g. *25 letters, 2 × 3 inches*.

```
<gap
  extent="5 words"    xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"
xmlns:ns152="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0"/>
<height
  extent="half the page"/>
```

**@precision** characterizes the precision of the values specified by the other attributes.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `"high" | "medium" | "low" | "unknown"`

**@scope** where the measurement summarizes more than one observation, specifies the applicability of this measurement.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `xsd:Name`

*Sample values include:* **all** measurement applies to all instances.

**most** measurement applies to most of the instances inspected.

**range** measurement applies to only the specified range of instances.

---

**att.divLike** provides attributes common to all elements which behave in the same way as divisions.

*Module* `tei`

*Members* `<div> <lg>`

*Attributes* In addition to global attributes

**@org** (organization) specifies how the content of the division is organized.

*Status* Optional

*Legal values are:* **composite** composite content: i.e. no claim is made about the sequence in which the immediate contents of this division are to be processed, or their inter-relationships.

**uniform** uniform content: i.e. the immediate contents of this element are regarded as forming a logical unit, to be processed in sequence.

[Default]

**@sample** indicates whether this division is a sample of the original source and if so, from which part.

*Status* Optional

*Legal values are:* **initial** division lacks material present at end in source.

**medial** division lacks material at start and end.

**final** division lacks material at start.

**unknown** position of sampled material within original unknown.

**complete** division is not a sample. [Default]

**@part** specifies whether or not the division is fragmented by some other structural element, for example a speech which is divided between two or more verse stanzas.

*Status* Mandatory when applicable

*Legal values are:* **Y** (yes) the division is incomplete in some respect

**N** (no) either the division is complete, or no claim is made as to its completeness. [Default]

**I** (initial) the initial part of an incomplete division

**M** (medial) a medial part of an incomplete division

**F** (final) the final part of an incomplete division

*Note* The values **I**, **M**, or **F** should be used only where it is clear how the division is to be reconstituted.

**att.editLike** provides attributes describing the nature of an encoded scholarly intervention or interpretation of any kind.

*Module* tei

*Members* «att.transcriptional» [**add** **del**] «corr» «date» «expan» «gap» «reg» «time» «unclear»

*Attributes* «att.dimensions» (**unit**, **quantity**, **extent**, **precision**, **scope**) («att.ranging» (**atLeast**, **atMost**, **min**, **max**)) «att.responsibility» (**cert**, **resp**)

**@evidence** indicates the nature of the evidence supporting the reliability or accuracy of the intervention or interpretation.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `xsd:Name`

*Suggested values include:* **internal** there is internal evidence to support the intervention.

**external** there is external evidence to support the intervention.

**conjecture** the intervention or interpretation has been made by the editor, cataloguer, or scholar on the basis of their expertise.

**@source** contains a list of one or more pointers indicating the sources which support the given reading.

*Status* Mandatory when applicable

*Datatype* 1–∞ occurrences of `xsd:anyURI` separated by whitespace

*Values* A space-delimited series of sigla; each sigil should correspond to a witness or witness group and occur as the value of the **xml:id** attribute on a <witness> or <msDesc> element elsewhere in the document.

*Note* The members of this attribute class are typically used to represent any kind of editorial intervention in a text, for example a correction or interpretation, or to date or localize manuscripts etc.

**att.global** provides attributes common to all elements in the TEI encoding scheme.

*Module* tei

*Members*

*Attributes* «att.global.linking» (**corresp**, **synch**, **sameAs**, **copyOf**, **next**, **prev**, **exclude**, **select**) «att.global.analytic» (**ana**)

**@xml:id** (identifier) provides a unique identifier for the element bearing the attribute.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `xsd:ID`

*Values* any valid XML identifier.

*Note* The **xml:id** attribute may be used to specify a canonical reference for an element; see section «CORS».

**@n** (number) gives a number (or other label) for an element, which is not necessarily unique within the document.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1–∞ occurrences

of `token { pattern = "(\\p{L}|\\p{N}|\\p{P}|\\p{S})+" }`  
separated by whitespace

*Values* the value may contain only letters, digits, punctuation characters, or symbols; it may not contain whitespace or word separating characters. It need not be restricted to numbers.

*Note* The **n** attribute may be used to specify the numbering of chapters, sections, list items, etc.; it may also be used in the specification of a standard reference system for the text.

**@xml:lang** (language) indicates the language of the element content using a ‘tag’ generated according to BCP 47

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `xsd:language`

*Values* The value must conform to BCP 47. If the value is a private use code (i.e., starts with x- or contains -x-) it should, and if not it may, match the value of an **ident** attribute of a <language> element supplied in the TEI Header of the current document.

*Note* If no value is specified for **xml:lang**, the **xml:lang** value for the immediately enclosing element is inherited; for this reason, a value should always be specified on the outermost element (<TEI>).

**@rend** (rendition) indicates how the element in question was rendered or presented in the source text.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1–∞ occurrences

of `token { pattern = "(\\p{L}|\\p{N}|\\p{P}|\\p{S})+" }`  
separated by whitespace

*Values* may contain any number of tokens, each of which may contain letters, punctuation marks, or symbols, but not word-separating characters.

```
<head
  rend="align(center) case(allcaps) "
xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"
xmlns:ns158="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <b>To The <b>Duchesse <b>of <b>Newcastle,
<b>On Her <b>
  <hi
    rend="case(mixed) ">New Blazing-World</hi>.
</head>
```

*Note* These Guidelines make no binding recommendations for the values of the **rend** attribute; the characteristics of visual presentation vary too much from text to text and the decision to record or ignore individual characteristics varies too much from project to project. Some potentially useful conventions are noted from time to time at appropriate points in the Guidelines.

**@rendition** points to a description of the rendering or presentation used for this element in the source text.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1–∞ occurrences of `xsd:anyURI` separated by whitespace

*Values* one or more URIs, separated by whitespace.

```
<head
  rendition="#ac #sc"   xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"
xmlns:ns158="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
```

```

<lb/>To The <lb/>Duchesse <lb/>of <lb/>Newcastle, <lb/>On Her
<lb/>
  <hi
    rendition="#no">New Blazing-World</hi>.
</head>
<!-- elsewhere... -->
<rendition
  xml:id="sc"
  scheme="css">font-variant:  small-caps</rendition>
<rendition
  xml:id="no"
  scheme="css">font-variant:  normal</rendition>
<rendition
  xml:id="ac"
  scheme="css">text-align:  center</rendition>

```

*Note* The **rendition** attribute is used in a very similar way to the **class** attribute defined for XHTML but with the important distinction that its function is to describe the appearance of the source text, not necessarily to determine how that text should be presented on screen or paper. Where both **rendition** and **rend** are supplied, the latter is understood to override or complement the former. Each URI provided should indicate a `<rendition>` element defining the intended rendition in terms of some appropriate style language, as indicated by the **scheme** attribute.

**@xml:base** provides a base URI reference with which applications can resolve relative URI references into absolute URI references.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `xsd:anyURI`

*Values* any syntactically valid URI reference.

```

<div
  type="bibl"  xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"
  xmlns:ns158="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <head>Bibliography</head>
  <listBibl
    xml:base="http://www.lib.ucdavis.edu/BWRP/Works/">
    <bibl
      n="1">
      <author>
        <name>Landon, Letitia Elizabeth</name>
      </author>
      <ref
        target="LandLVowOf.sgm">
        <title>The Vow of the Peacock</title>
      </ref>
    </bibl>
    <bibl
      n="2">
      <author>
        <name>Compton, Margaret Clephane</name>
      </author>
      <ref
        target="NortMIrene.sgm">
        <title>Irene, a Poem in Six Cantos</title>
      </ref>
    </bibl>

```

```
<bibl
  n="3">
  <author>
    <name>Taylor, Jane</name>
  </author>
  <ref
    target="TaylJEssay.sgm">
    <title>Essays in Rhyme on Morals and Manners</title>
  </ref>
</bibl>
</listBibl>
</div>
```

**@xml:space** signals an intention about how white space should be managed by applications.

*Status* Optional

*Legal values are:* **default** the processor should treat white space according to the default XML white space handling rules

**preserve** the processor should preserve unchanged any and all white space in the source

*Note* The XML specification provides further guidance on the use of this attribute.

*Note* The global attributes described here are made part of the attribute definition list declaration of each element by including a reference to the pattern `att.global.attributes` in each such declaration.

---

**att.global.analytic** provides additional global attributes for associating specific analyses or interpretations with appropriate portions of a text.

*Module* analysis

*Members* «att.global»

*Attributes* In addition to global attributes

**@ana** (analysis) indicates one or more elements containing interpretations of the element on which the **ana** attribute appears.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1–∞ occurrences of `xsd:anyURI` separated by whitespace

*Values* one or more valid identifiers of one or more interpretive elements (usually `<fs>` or `<interp>`), separated by white space.

*Note* When multiple values are given, they may reflect either multiple divergent interpretations of an ambiguous text, or multiple mutually consistent interpretations of the same passage in different contexts.

---

**att.global.linking** defines a set of attributes for hypertext and other linking, which are enabled for all elements when the additional tag set for linking is selected.

*Module* linking

*Members* «att.global»

*Attributes* In addition to global attributes

**@corresp** (corresponds) points to elements that correspond to the current element in some way.

- Status* Optional  
*Datatype* 1–∞ occurrences of `xsd:anyURI` separated by whitespace  
*Values* one or more URIs, separated by whitespace.
- @synch** (synchronous) points to elements that are synchronous with the current element.  
*Status* Optional  
*Datatype* 1–∞ occurrences of `xsd:anyURI` separated by whitespace  
*Values* one or more URIs, separated by whitespace.
- @sameAs** points to an element that is the same as the current element.  
*Status* Optional  
*Datatype* `xsd:anyURI`  
*Values* a URI.
- @copyOf** points to an element of which the current element is a copy.  
*Status* Optional  
*Datatype* `xsd:anyURI`  
*Values* a URI.  
*Note* Any content of the current element should be ignored. Its true content is that of the element being pointed at.
- @next** points to the next element of a virtual aggregate of which the current element is part.  
*Status* Optional  
*Datatype* `xsd:anyURI`  
*Values* a URI.
- @prev** (previous) points to the previous element of a virtual aggregate of which the current element is part.  
*Status* Optional  
*Datatype* `xsd:anyURI`  
*Values* a URI.
- @exclude** points to elements that are in exclusive alternation with the current element.  
*Status* Optional  
*Datatype* 1–∞ occurrences of `xsd:anyURI` separated by whitespace  
*Values* one or more URIs, separated by whitespace.
- @select** selects one or more alternants; if one alternant is selected, the ambiguity or uncertainty is marked as resolved. If more than one alternant is selected, the degree of ambiguity or uncertainty is marked as reduced by the number of alternants not selected.  
*Status* Optional  
*Datatype* 1–∞ occurrences of `xsd:anyURI` separated by whitespace  
*Values* one or more URIs, separated by whitespace.  
*Note* This attribute should be placed on an element which is superordinate to all of the alternants from which the selection is being made.

---

**att.internetMedia** provides attributes for specifying the type of a computer resource using a standard taxonomy.

*Module* tei

*Members* «binaryObject» «graphic»

*Attributes* In addition to global attributes

**@mimeType** (MIME media type) specifies the applicable multimedia internet mail extension (MIME) media type

*Status* Mandatory when applicable

*Datatype*

`token { pattern = "(\\p{L}|\\p{N}|\\p{P}|\\p{S})+" }`

*Values* The value should be a valid MIME media type

*Note* This attribute class provides attributes for describing a computer resource, typically available over the internet, according to standard taxonomies. At present only a single taxonomy is supported, the Multipurpose Internet Mail Extensions Media Type system. This system of typology of media types is defined by the Internet Engineering Task Force in RFC 2046. The list of types is maintained by the Internet Assigned Numbers Authority.

---

**att.interpLike** provides attributes for elements which represent a formal analysis or interpretation.

*Module* tei

*Members* «ana» «span»

*Attributes* «att.responsibility» (@cert, @resp)

**@type** indicates what kind of phenomenon is being noted in the passage.

*Status* Recommended

*Datatype* `xsd:Name`

*Sample values include:* **image** identifies an image in the passage.

**character** identifies a character associated with the passage.

**theme** identifies a theme in the passage.

**allusion** identifies an allusion to another text.

**@inst** (instances) points to instances of the analysis or interpretation represented by the current element.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1–∞ occurrences of `xsd:anyURI` separated by whitespace

*Values* One or more valid identifiers, separated by whitespace.

*Note* The current element should be an analytic one. The element pointed at should be a textual one.

---

**att.measurement** provides attributes to represent a regularized or normalized measurement.

*Module* tei

*Members* «measure» «measureGrp»

*Attributes* In addition to global attributes

**@unit** indicates the units used for the measurement, usually using the standard symbol for the desired units.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `xsd:Name`

*Suggested values include:* **m** (metre) SI base unit of length

**kg** (kilogram) SI base unit of mass

**s** (second) SI base unit of time

**Hz** (hertz) SI unit of frequency

**Pa** (pascal) SI unit of pressure or stress



$\Omega$  (ohm) SI unit of electric resistance

**L** (litre) 1 dm<sup>3</sup>

**t** (tonne) 10<sup>3</sup> kg

**ha** (hectare) 1 hm<sup>2</sup>

**Å** (ångström) 10<sup>-10</sup> m

**mL** (millilitre)

**cm** (centimetre)

**dB** (decibel) see remarks, below

**kbit** (kilobit) 10<sup>3</sup> or 1000 bits

**Kibit** (kibibit) 2<sup>10</sup> or 1024 bits

**kB** (kilobyte) 10<sup>3</sup> or 1000 bytes

**KiB** (kibibyte) 2<sup>10</sup> or 1024 bytes

**MB** (megabyte) 10<sup>6</sup> or 1 000 000 bytes

**MiB** (mebibyte) 2<sup>20</sup> or 1 048 576 bytes

*Note* If the measurement being represented is not expressed in a particular unit, but rather is a number of discrete items, the unit **count** should be used, or the **unit** attribute may be left unspecified. Wherever appropriate, a recognised SI unit name should be used (see further <http://www.bipm.org/en/si/>; <http://physics.nist.gov/cuu/Units/>). The list above is indicative rather than exhaustive.

**@quantity** specifies the number of the specified units that comprise the measurement

*Status* Optional

*Datatype*

```
xsd:double | token { pattern = "(\\-?[\\d]+/\\-?[\\d]+)" } | xsd:decimal
```

**@commodity** indicates the substance that is being measured

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1-∞ occurrences

```
of token { pattern = "(\\p{L}|\\p{N}|\\p{P}|\\p{S})+" }
separated by whitespace
```

*Note* In general, when the commodity is made of discrete entities, the plural form should be used, even when the measurement is of only one of them.

*Note* This attribute class provides a triplet of attributes that may be used either to regularize the values of the measurement being encoded, or to normalize them with respect to a standard measurement system.

```
<!-- regularization:-><l xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"
xmlns:ns164="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">So weren't you gonna buy
<measure quantity="0.5" unit="gal" commodity="ice cream">half a
gallon</measure>, baby</l>
<!-- normalization: ->
<l>So won't you go and buy
<measure quantity="1.893" unit="L" commodity="ice cream">half a
gallon</measure>,
baby?</l>
```

*Note* The unit should normally be named using the standard abbreviation for an SI unit (see further <http://www.bipm.org/en/si/>;

`http://physics.nist.gov/cuu/Units/`). However, encoders may also specify measurements using informally defined units such as **lines** or **characters**.

---

**att.naming** provides attributes common to elements which refer to named persons, places, organizations etc.

*Module* `tei`

*Members* «author» «editor» «name» «pubPlace» «rs»

*Attributes* «att.canonical» (`@key`, `@ref`)

`@role` may be used to specify further information about the entity referenced by this name, for example the occupation of a person, or the status of a place.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `xsd:Name`

`@nymRef` (reference to the canonical name) provides a means of locating the canonical form (*nym*) of the names associated with the object named by the element bearing it.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1–∞ occurrences of `xsd:anyURI` separated by whitespace

*Values* One or more valid identifiers, separated by whitespace.

*Note* The value must point directly to one or more XML elements by means of one or more URIs, separated by whitespace. If more than one is supplied, the implication is that the name is associated with several distinct canonical names.

---

**att.placement** provides attributes for describing where on the source page or object a textual element appears.

*Module* `tei`

*Members* «add» «figure» «note»

*Attributes* In addition to global attributes

`@place` *Status* Recommended

*Datatype* 1–∞ occurrences of `xsd:Name` separated by whitespace

*Suggested values include:* **below** below the line

**bottom** at the foot of the page

**margin** in the margin (left, right, or both)

**top** at the top of the page

**opposite** on the opposite, i.e. facing, page

**overleaf** on the other side of the leaf

**above** above the line

**end** at the end of e.g. chapter or volume.

**inline** within the body of the text.

**inspace** in a predefined space, for example left by an earlier scribe.

```
<add
  place="margin"   xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"
xmlns:ns166="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">[An addition written in the
margin]</add>
<add
```

```
place="bottom opposite">[An addition written at the
foot of the current page and also on the facing page]</add>
```

```
<note
  place="bottom"    xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"
  xmlns:ns166="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">Ibid, p.7</note>
```

**att.pointing** defines a set of attributes used by all elements which point to other elements by means of one or more URI references.

*Module linking*

*Members* «att.pointing.group» [«altGrp» «joinGrp» «linkGrp»] «alt» «join» «link» «ptr» «ref»

*Attributes* In addition to global attributes

**@type** categorizes the pointer in some respect, using any convenient set of categories.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `xsd:Name`

*Values* The type should indicate the intended function of the pointer, or the rhetorical relationship between its source and target.

**@evaluate** specifies the intended meaning when the target of a pointer is itself a pointer.

*Status* Optional

*Legal values are:* **all** if the element pointed to is itself a pointer, then the target of that pointer will be taken, and so on, until an element is found which is not a pointer.

**one** if the element pointed to is itself a pointer, then its target (whether a pointer or not) is taken as the target of this pointer.

**none** no further evaluation of targets is carried out beyond that needed to find the element specified in the pointer's target.

*Note* If no value is given, the application program is responsible for deciding (possibly on the basis of user input) how far to trace a chain of pointers.

**att.pointing.group** defines a set of attributes common to all elements which enclose groups of pointer elements.

*Module linking*

*Members* «altGrp» «joinGrp» «linkGrp»

*Attributes* «att.pointing» (@type, @evaluate)

**@domains** optionally specifies the identifiers of the elements within which all elements indicated by the contents of this element lie.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 2–∞ occurrences of `xsd:Name` separated by whitespace

*Values* a list of at least two generic identifier names, separated by whitespace.

*Note* If this attribute is supplied every element specified as a target must be contained within the element or elements named by it. An application may choose whether or not to report failures to satisfy this constraint as errors, but may not access an element of the right identifier but in the wrong context. If this attribute is not supplied, then target elements may appear anywhere within the target document.

**@targFunc** (target function) describes the function of each of the values of the **targets** attribute of the enclosed <link>, <join>, or <alt> tags.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 2–∞ occurrences

of `token { pattern = "(\\p{L}|\\p{N}|\\p{P}|\\p{S})+" }`  
separated by whitespace

*Values* a list of at least two valid names, separated by whitespace.

*Note* The number of separate values must match the number of values in the **targets** attribute in the enclosed <link>, <join>, or <alt> tags (an intermediate <ptr> element may be needed to accomplish this). It should also match the number of values in the **domains** attribute, of the current element, if one has been specified.

---

**att.ranging** provides attributes for describing numerical ranges.

*Module* tei

*Members* «att.dimensions» [«att.editLike» [«att.transcriptional» [«add» «del»] «corr» «date» «expan» «gap» «reg» «time» «unclear»] ] «num»

*Attributes* In addition to global attributes

**@atLeast** gives a minimum estimated value for the approximate measurement.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype*

`xsd:double | token { pattern = "(\\-?[\\d]+/\\-?[\\d]+)" }` | xsd:decimal

**@atMost** gives a maximum estimated value for the approximate measurement.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype*

`xsd:double | token { pattern = "(\\-?[\\d]+/\\-?[\\d]+)" }` | xsd:decimal

**@min** where the measurement summarizes more than one observation or a range, supplies the minimum value observed.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype*

`xsd:double | token { pattern = "(\\-?[\\d]+/\\-?[\\d]+)" }` | xsd:decimal

**@max** where the measurement summarizes more than one observation or a range, supplies the maximum value observed.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype*

`xsd:double | token { pattern = "(\\-?[\\d]+/\\-?[\\d]+)" }` | xsd:decimal

---

**att.responsibility** provides attributes indicating who is responsible for something asserted by the markup and the degree of certainty associated with it.

*Module* tei

*Members* «att.editLike» [«att.transcriptional» [«add» «del»] «corr» «date» «expan» «gap» «reg» «time» «unclear»] «att.interpLike» [«ana» «span»] «note»

*Attributes* In addition to global attributes

**@cert** (certainty) signifies the degree of certainty associated with the intervention or interpretation.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `"high" | "medium" | "low" | "unknown"`

**@resp** (responsible party) indicates the agency responsible for the intervention or interpretation, for example an editor or transcriber.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1–∞ occurrences of `xsd:anyURI` separated by whitespace

*Values* A pointer to an element in the document header that is associated with a person asserted as responsible for some aspect of the text's creation, transcription, editing, or encoding.

---

**att\_segLike** provides attributes for elements used for arbitrary segmentation.

*Module* tei

*Members* «c» «m» «pc» «phr» «s» «seg» «w»

*Attributes* In addition to global attributes

**@function** characterizes the function of the segment.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `xsd:Name`

*Values* For a <cl>, may take values such as coordinate, subject, adverbial etc.

For a <phr>, such values as subject, predicate etc. may be more appropriate.

**@part** specifies whether or not the segment is fragmented by some other structural element, for example a clause which is divided between two or more sentences.

*Status* Mandatory when applicable

*Legal values are:* **Y** (yes) the segment is incomplete in some respect

**N** (no) either the segment is complete, or no claim is made as to its completeness [Default]

**I** (initial) the initial part of an incomplete segment

**M** (medial) a medial part of an incomplete segment

**F** (final) the final part of an incomplete segment

*Note* The values **I**, **M**, or **F** should be used only where it is clear how the division is to be reconstituted.

---

**att\_sourced** provides attributes identifying the source edition from which some encoded feature derives.

*Module* tei

*Members* «cb» «lb» «milestone» «pb» «refState»

*Attributes* In addition to global attributes

**@ed** (edition) supplies an arbitrary identifier for the source edition in which the associated feature (for example, a page, column, or line break) occurs at this point in the text.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1–∞ occurrences of `xsd:anyURI` separated by whitespace

*Values* Any string of characters; usually a siglum conventionally used for the edition.

```
<1 xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"
xmlns:ns180="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">Of Mans First
Disobedience,<1b ed="1674"/> and<1b ed="1667"/> the Fruit</1>
<1>Of that Forbidden Tree, whose<1b ed="1667 1674"/> mortal tast</1>
<1>Brought Death into the World,<1b ed="1667"/> and all<1b ed="1674"/> our
woe,</1>
```

*Example*

---

**att.tableDecoration** provides attributes used to decorate rows or cells of a table.

*Module* tei

*Members* «cell» «row»

*Attributes* In addition to global attributes

**@role** indicates the kind of information held in this cell or in each cell of this row.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `xsd:Name`

*Suggested values include:* **label** labelling or descriptive information only.

**data** data values. [Default]

*Note* When this attribute is specified on a row, its value is the default for all cells in this row. When specified on a cell, its value overrides any default specified by the **role** attribute of the parent <row> element.

**@rows** indicates the number of rows occupied by this cell or row.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `xsd:nonNegativeInteger`

*Values* A number; a value greater than one indicates that this cell (or row) spans several rows.

*Note* Where several cells span several rows, it may be more convenient to use nested tables.

**@cols** (columns) indicates the number of columns occupied by this cell or row.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `xsd:nonNegativeInteger`

*Values* A number; a value greater than one indicates that this cell or row spans several columns.

*Note* Where an initial cell spans an entire row, it may be better treated as a heading.

---

**att.transcriptional** provides attributes specific to elements encoding authorial or scribal intervention in a text when transcribing manuscript or similar sources.

*Module* tei

*Members* «add» «del»

*Attributes* «att.editLike» (@evidence, @source) («att.dimensions» (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) («att.ranging» (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max)) )  
(«att.responsibility» (@cert, @resp))

**@hand** signifies the hand of the agent which made the intervention.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `xsd:anyURI`

*Values* must refer to a <handNote> element, typically declared in the document header (see section «PHDH»).

**@status** indicates the effect of the intervention, for example in the case of a deletion, strikeouts which include too much or too little text, or in the case of an addition, an insertion which duplicates some of the text already present.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `xsd:Name`

*Sample values include:* **duplicate** all of the text indicated as an addition duplicates some text that is in the original, whether the duplication is word-for-word or less exact.

**duplicate-partial** part of the text indicated as an addition duplicates some text that is in the original

**excessStart** some text at the beginning of the deletion is marked as deleted even though it clearly should not be deleted.

**excessEnd** some text at the end of the deletion is marked as deleted even though it clearly should not be deleted.

**shortStart** some text at the beginning of the deletion is not marked as deleted even though it clearly should be.

**shortEnd** some text at the end of the deletion is not marked as deleted even though it clearly should be.

**partial** some text in the deletion is not marked as deleted even though it clearly should be.

**unremarkable** the deletion is not faulty. [Default]

*Note* Status information on each deletion is needed rather rarely except in critical editions from authorial manuscripts; status information on additions is even less common. Marking a deletion or addition as faulty is inescapably an interpretive act; the usual test applied in practice is the linguistic acceptability of the text with and without the letters or words in question.

**@seq** (sequence) assigns a sequence number related to the order in which the encoded features carrying this attribute are believed to have occurred.

*Status* Mandatory when applicable

*Datatype* `xsd:nonNegativeInteger`

---

**att.translatable** provides attributes used to indicate the status of a translatable portion of an ODD document.

*Module* tei

*Members* «desc» «gloss»

*Attributes* In addition to global attributes

**@version** specifies the version name or number of the source from which the translated version was derived

*Status* Optional

*Datatype*

`token { pattern = "(\\p{L}|\\p{N}|\\p{P}|\\p{S})+" }`

*Note* The version may be a number, a letter, or a date

**att.typed** provides attributes which can be used to classify or subclassify elements in any way.

*Module* tei

*Members* «ab» «add» «anchor» «application» «bibl» «biblStruct» «c» «cb» «cit» «corr» «date» «del» «div» «gloss» «head» «lb» «lg» «listBibl» «m» «measureGrp» «milestone» «name» «pb» «pc» «phr» «quote» «reg» «relatedItem» «s» «seg» «term» «text» «time» «w»

*Attributes* In addition to global attributes

**@type** characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `xsd:Name`

**@subtype** provides a sub-categorization of the element, if needed

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `xsd:Name`

*Note* The **subtype** attribute may be used to provide any sub-classification for the element, additional to that provided by its **type** attribute.

*Note* The typology used may be formally defined using the <classification> element of the <encodingDesc> within the associated TEI header, or as a list within one of the components of the <encodingDesc> element, or informally as descriptive prose within the <encodingDesc> element.

## 5 Elements

---

**<S/>** mte: indicates linguistically important whitespace in the text

*Module* analysis

*Used by* «model.segLike»

*May contain* Empty element

*Declaration* `element S { att.global.attributes, empty }`

**<TEI>** (TEI document) contains a single TEI-conformant document, comprising a TEI header and a text, either in isolation or as part of a <teiCorpus> element.

*Module* textstructure

*Used by* «teiCorpus»

*May contain*

header: «teiHeader»

iso-fs: «fsdDecl»

textstructure: «text»

*Declaration*

```
element TEI
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute version { xsd:decimal }?,
  ( teiHeader, ( ( model.resourceLike+, text? ) | text ) )
}
```



```

<ns xmlns="http://purl.oclc.org/dsdl/schematron"
  prefix="tei" uri="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0"/>
<ns xmlns="http://purl.oclc.org/dsdl/schematron"
  prefix="rng" uri="http://relaxng.org/ns/structure/1.0"/>

```

```

Example <TEI xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"
  xmlns:ns186="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <teiHeader>
    <fileDesc>
      <titleStmt>
        <title>The shortest TEI Document Imaginable</title>
      </titleStmt>
      <publicationStmt>
        <p>First published as part of TEI P2.</p>
      </publicationStmt>
      <sourceDesc>
        <p>No source: this is an original work.</p>
      </sourceDesc>
    </fileDesc>
  </teiHeader>
  <text>
    <body>
      <p>This is about the shortest TEI document imaginable.</p>
    </body>
  </text>
</TEI>

```

*Note* This element is required.

**<ab>** (anonymous block) contains any arbitrary component-level unit of text, acting as an anonymous container for phrase or inter level elements analogous to, but without the semantic baggage of, a paragraph.

*Module linking*

*Used by* «model.pLike»

*May contain*

**analysis:** «S» «ana» «c» «m» «pc» «phr» «s» «span» «tok» «w»

**core:** «abbr» «add» «address» «bibl» «biblStruct» «binaryObject» «cb» «choice» «cit» «corr» «date» «del» «desc» «distinct» «email» «emph» «expan» «foreign» «gap» «gloss» «graphic» «hi» «label» «lb» «list» «listBibl» «measure» «measureGrp» «mentioned» «milestone» «name» «note» «num» «orig» «pb» «ptr» «q» «quote» «ref» «reg» «rs» «said» «sic» «soCalled» «stage» «term» «time» «title» «unclear»

**figures:** «figure» «formula» «table»

**header:** «biblFull»

**iso-fs:** «fLib» «fs» «fvLib»

**linking:** «alt» «altGrp» «anchor» «join» «joinGrp» «link» «linkGrp» «seg» «timeline»

*Declaration*

```

element ab
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,

```

```
attribute part { "Y" | "N" | "I" | "M" | "F" }?,
macro.paraContent }
```

*Example* `<div type="book" n="Genesis" xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns188="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">`  
`<div type="chapter" n="1">`  
`<ab>In the beginning God created the heaven and the earth.</ab>`  
`<ab>And the earth was without form, and void; and darkness was upon the`  
`face of the deep. And the spirit of God moved upon the face of the`  
`waters.</ab>`  
`<ab>And God said, Let there be light: and there was light.</ab>`  
`<!-- ...-->`  
`</div>`  
`</div>`

*Note* The `<ab>` element may be used at the encoder's discretion to mark any component-level elements in a text for which no other more specific appropriate markup is defined.

**<abbr>** (abbreviation) contains an abbreviation of any sort.

*Module* core

*Used by* «model.pPart.editorial» «model.choicePart»

*May contain*

*analysis:* «S» «ana» «c» «m» «pc» «phr» «s» «span» «tok» «w»

*core:* «abbr» «add» «address» «binaryObject» «cb» «choice» «corr» «date» «del»  
«distinct» «email» «emph» «expan» «foreign» «gap» «gloss» «graphic» «hi» «lb»  
«measure» «measureGrp» «mentioned» «milestone» «name» «note» «num» «orig»  
«pb» «ptr» «ref» «reg» «rs» «sic» «soCalled» «term» «time» «title» «unclear»

*figures:* «figure» «formula»

*iso-fs:* «fLib» «fs» «fvLib»

*linking:* «alt» «altGrp» «anchor» «join» «joinGrp» «link» «linkGrp» «seg» «timeline»

*Declaration*

```
element abbr
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute type { xsd:Name }?,
  macro.phraseSeq }
```

*Example* `<abbr xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns191="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">SPQR</abbr>`

*Example* `<choice xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns191="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">`  
`<abbr>SPQR</abbr>`  
`<expan>senatus populusque romanorum</expan>`  
`</choice>`

*Note* The `<abbr>` tag is not required; if appropriate, the encoder may transcribe abbreviations in the source text silently, without tagging them. If abbreviations are not transcribed directly but *expanded* silently, then the TEI header should so indicate.

**<add>** (addition) contains letters, words, or phrases inserted in the text by an author, scribe, annotator, or corrector.

*Module* core

*Used by* «model.pPart.transcriptional»

*May contain*

**analysis:** «S» «ana» «c» «m» «pc» «phr» «s» «span» «tok» «w»

**core:** «abbr» «add» «address» «bibl» «biblStruct» «binaryObject» «cb» «choice» «cit» «corr» «date» «del» «desc» «distinct» «email» «emph» «expan» «foreign» «gap» «gloss» «graphic» «hi» «label» «lb» «list» «listBibl» «measure» «measureGrp» «mentioned» «milestone» «name» «note» «num» «orig» «pb» «ptr» «q» «quote» «ref» «reg» «rs» «said» «sic» «soCalled» «stage» «term» «time» «title» «unclear»

**figures:** «figure» «formula» «table»

**header:** «biblFull»

**iso-fs:** «fLib» «fs» «fvLib»

**linking:** «alt» «altGrp» «anchor» «join» «joinGrp» «link» «linkGrp» «seg» «timeline»

*Declaration*

```

element add
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.transcriptional.attributes,
  att.placement.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  macro.paraContent }

```

*Example* The story I am going to relate is true as to its main facts, and as to the consequences <add place="above" xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns193="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">of these facts</add> from which this tale takes its title.

*Note* The <add> element should not be used for additions made by editors or encoders. In these cases, either the <corr> or <supplied> element should be used.

**<addrLine>** (address line) contains one line of a postal address.

*Module* core

*Used by* «model.addrPart»

*May contain*

**analysis:** «S» «ana» «c» «m» «pc» «phr» «s» «span» «tok» «w»

**core:** «abbr» «add» «address» «binaryObject» «cb» «choice» «corr» «date» «del» «distinct» «email» «emph» «expan» «foreign» «gap» «gloss» «graphic» «hi» «lb» «measure» «measureGrp» «mentioned» «milestone» «name» «note» «num» «orig» «pb» «ptr» «ref» «reg» «rs» «sic» «soCalled» «term» «time» «title» «unclear»

**figures:** «figure» «formula»

**iso-fs:** «fLib» «fs» «fvLib»

**linking:** «alt» «altGrp» «anchor» «join» «joinGrp» «link» «linkGrp» «seg» «timeline»

*Declaration*

```

element addrLine { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }

```

```

Example <address xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"
xmlns:ns195="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <addrLine>Computing Center, MC 135</addrLine>
  <addrLine>P.O. Box 6998</addrLine>
  <addrLine>Chicago, IL</addrLine>
  <addrLine>60680 USA</addrLine>
</address>

```

*Note* Addresses may be encoded either as a sequence of lines, or using any sequence of component elements from the `model.addrPart` class. Other non-postal forms of address, such as telephone numbers or email, should not be included within an `<address>` element directly but may be wrapped within an `<addrLine>` if they form part of the printed address in some source text.

**<address>** contains a postal address, for example of a publisher, an organization, or an individual.

*Module* core

*Used by* «model.addressLike» «model.publicationStmntPart»

*May contain*

analysis: «span»

core: «addrLine» «cb» «gap» «lb» «milestone» «name» «note» «pb» «postBox»  
«postCode» «rs» «street»

figures: «figure»

iso-fs: «fLib» «fs» «fvLib»

linking: «alt» «altGrp» «anchor» «join» «joinGrp» «link» «linkGrp» «timeline»

*Declaration*

```

element address
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( model.global*, ( ( model.addrPart ), model.global* )+ )
}

```

```

Example <address xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"
xmlns:ns196="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <street>via Marsala 24</street>
  <postCode>40126</postCode>
  <name>Bologna</name>
  <name n="I">Italy</name>
</address>

```

```

Example <address xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"
xmlns:ns196="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <addrLine>Computing Center, MC 135</addrLine>
  <addrLine>P.O. Box 6998</addrLine>
  <addrLine>Chicago, IL 60680</addrLine>
  <addrLine>USA</addrLine>
</address>

```

*Note* This element should be used for postal addresses only. Within it, the generic element `<addrLine>` may be used as an alternative to any of the more specialized elements available from the `model.addrPart` class, such as `<street>`, `<postCode>` etc.

**<alt/>** (alternation) identifies an alternation or a set of choices among elements or passages.

*Module linking*

*Used by* «altGrp» «model.global.meta»

*May contain* Empty element

*Declaration*

```

element alt
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.pointing.attributes,
  attribute targets { list { xsd:anyURI, xsd:anyURI+ } },
  attribute mode { "excl" | "incl" }?,
  attribute weights
  {
    list
    {
      xsd:double { minInclusive = "0" maxInclusive = "1" },
      xsd:double { minInclusive = "0" maxInclusive = "1" }+
    }
  }?,
  empty
}

```

*Example* `<alt mode="excl" targets="#we.fun #we.sun" weights="0.5 0.5" xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns197="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0"/>`

**<altGrp>** (alternation group) groups a collection of <alt> elements and possibly pointers.

*Module linking*

*Used by* «model.global.meta»

*May contain*

core: «ptr»

linking: «alt»

*Declaration*

```

element altGrp
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.pointing.group.attributes,
  attribute mode { "excl" | "incl" }?,
  ( alt | ptr )*
}

```

*Example* `<altGrp mode="excl" xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns203="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">  
 <alt targets="#dm #lt #bb" weights="0.5 0.25 0.25"/>  
 <alt targets="#rl #db" weights="0.5 0.5"/>  
</altGrp>`

*Example* `<altGrp mode="incl" xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns203="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">  
 <alt targets="#dm #rl" weights="0.90 0.90"/>  
 <alt targets="#lt #rl" weights="0.5 0.5"/>`

```

<alt targets="#bb #r1" weights="0.5 0.5"/>
<alt targets="#dm #db" weights="0.10 0.10"/>
<alt targets="#lt #db" weights="0.45 0.90"/>
<alt targets="#bb #db" weights="0.45 0.90"/>
</altGrp>

```

*Note* Any number of alternations, pointers or extended pointers.

**<ana>** mte: *analysis* gives a feature-structure analysis of a token.

*Module* analysis

*Used by* «tok» «model.segLike»

*May contain*

iso-fs: «fs» «vColl»

*Declaration*

```

element ana
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.interpLike.attributes,
  ( fs | vColl )+
}

```

**<analytic>** (analytic level) contains bibliographic elements describing an item (e.g. an article or poem) published within a monograph or journal and not as an independent publication.

*Module* core

*Used by* «biblStruct»

*May contain*

core: «author» «editor» «respStmt» «title»

*Declaration*

```

element analytic
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( author | editor | respStmt | title )*
}

```

*Example* `<biblStruct xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"`

`xmlns:ns208="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">`

```

<analytic>
  <author>Chesnutt, David</author>
  <title>Historical Editions in the States</title>
</analytic>
<monogr>
  <title level="j">Computers and the Humanities</title>
  <imprint>
    <biblScope>25.6</biblScope>
    <date when="1991-12">(December, 1991):</date>
    <biblScope>377-380</biblScope>
  </imprint>
</monogr>
</biblStruct>

```

*Note* May contain titles and statements of responsibility (author, editor, or other), in any order. The `<analytic>` element may only occur only within a `<biblStruct>`, where its use is mandatory for the description of an analytic level bibliographic item.

**<anchor/>** (anchor point) attaches an identifier to a point within a text, whether or not it corresponds with a textual element.

*Module* linking

*Used by* «model.milestoneLike»

*May contain* Empty element

*Declaration*

```
element anchor { att.global.attributes, att.typed.attributes, empty }
```

*Example*

```
<s xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"
xmlns:ns209="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">The anchor is
he<anchor xml:id="A234"/>re somewhere.</s>
<s>Help me find it.<ptr target="#A234"/>
</s>
```

*Note* On this element, the global **xml:id** attribute must be supplied to specify an identifier for the point at which this element occurs within a document. The value used may be chosen freely provided that it is unique within the document and is a syntactically valid name. There is no requirement for values containing numbers to be in sequence.

**<appInfo>** (application information) records information about an application which has edited the TEI file.

*Module* header

*Used by* «model.encodingDescPart»

*May contain*

header: «application»

*Declaration*

```
element appInfo { att.global.attributes, model.applicationLike+ }
```

*Example*

```
<appInfo xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"
xmlns:ns211="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <application version="1.24" ident="Xaira">
    <label>XAIRA Indexer</label>
    <ptr target="#P1"/>
  </application>
</appInfo>
```

**<application>** provides information about an application which has acted upon the document.

*Module* header

*Used by* «model.applicationLike»

*May contain*

core: «desc» «label» «p» «ptr» «ref»

linking: «ab»

*Declaration*

```

element application
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.dateable.attributes,
  attribute ident { xsd:Name },
  attribute version
  {
    token { pattern = "[\d]+[a-z]*[\d]*(\.[\d]+[a-z]*[\d]*){0,3}" }
  },
  ( model.labelLike+, ( model.ptrLike* | model.pLike* ) )
}

```

*Example* `<appInfo xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns212="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">  
 <application version="1.5" ident="ImageMarkupTool1" notAfter="2006-06-01">  
 <label>Image Markup Tool</label>  
 <ptr target="#P1"/>  
 <ptr target="#P2"/>  
 </application>  
</appInfo>`

This example shows an appInfo element documenting the fact that version 1.5 of the Image Markup Tool1 application has an interest in two parts of a document which was last saved on June 6 2006. The parts concerned are accessible at the URLs given as target for the two <ptr> elements.

**<author>** in a bibliographic reference, contains the name(s) of the author(s), personal or corporate, of a work; for example in the same form as that provided by a recognized bibliographic name authority.

*Module* core

*Used by* «analytic» «monogr» «model.respLike»

*May contain*

**analysis:** «S» «ana» «c» «m» «pc» «phr» «s» «span» «tok» «w»

**core:** «abbr» «add» «address» «binaryObject» «cb» «choice» «corr» «date» «del» «distinct» «email» «emph» «expan» «foreign» «gap» «gloss» «graphic» «hi» «lb» «measure» «measureGrp» «mentioned» «milestone» «name» «note» «num» «orig» «pb» «ptr» «ref» «reg» «rs» «sic» «soCalled» «term» «time» «title» «unclear»

**figures:** «figure» «formula»

**iso-fs:** «fLib» «fs» «fvLib»

**linking:** «alt» «altGrp» «anchor» «join» «joinGrp» «link» «linkGrp» «seg» «timeline»

*Declaration*

```

element author
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}

```



```

Example <author xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"
xmlns:ns215="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">British Broadcasting
Corporation</author>
<author>La Fayette, Marie Madeleine Pioche de la Vergne, comtesse de
(1634-1693)</author>
<author>Anonymous</author>
<author>Bill and Melinda Gates</author>
<author>
  <persName>Beaumont, Francis</persName> and
  <persName>John Fletcher</persName>
</author>
<author>
  <orgName key="BBC">British Broadcasting
  Corporation</orgName>: Radio 3 Network
</author>

```

*Note* Particularly where cataloguing is likely to be based on the content of the header, it is advisable to use a generally recognized name authority file to supply the content for this element. The attributes **key** or **ref** may also be used to reference canonical information about the author(s) intended from any appropriate authority, such as a library catalogue or online resource. In the case of a broadcast, use this element for the name of the company or network responsible for making the broadcast. Where an author is unknown or unspecified, this element may contain text such as *Unknown* or *Anonymous*. When the appropriate TEI modules are in use, it may also contain detailed tagging of the names used for people, organizations or places, in particular where multiple names are given.

**<authority>** (release authority) supplies the name of a person or other agency responsible for making an electronic file available, other than a publisher or distributor.

*Module header*

*Used by* «model.publicationStmtPart»

*May contain*

analysis: «span»  
 core: «abbr» «address» «cb» «choice» «date» «distinct» «email» «emph» «expan»  
 «foreign» «gap» «gloss» «lb» «measure» «measureGrp» «mentioned» «milestone»  
 «name» «note» «num» «pb» «ptr» «ref» «rs» «soCalled» «term» «time» «title»  
 figures: «figure»  
 iso-fs: «fLib» «fs» «fvLib»  
 linking: «alt» «altGrp» «anchor» «join» «joinGrp» «link» «linkGrp» «timeline»

*Declaration*

```

element authority { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq.limited }

```

```

Example <authority xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"
xmlns:ns217="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">John Smith</authority>

```

**<availability>** supplies information about the availability of a text, for example any restrictions on its use or distribution, its copyright status, etc.

*Module header*

*Used by* «model.publicationStmtPart»

*May contain*

core: «p»  
 linking: «ab»

*Declaration*

```

element availability
{
    att.global.attributes,
    att.declarable.attributes,
    attribute status { "free" | "unknown" | "restricted" }?,
    model.pLike+
}
    
```

```

Example <availability status="restricted"
xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"
xmlns:ns218="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <p>Available for academic research purposes only.</p>
</availability>
<availability status="free">
  <p>In the public domain</p>
</availability>
<availability status="restricted">
  <p>Available under licence from the publishers.</p>
</availability>
    
```

*Note* A consistent format should be adopted

---

**<back>** (back matter) contains any appendixes, etc. following the main part of a text.

*Module* textstructure

*Used by* «text»

*May contain*

analysis: «span»  
 core: «cb» «divGen» «gap» «head» «lb» «milestone» «note» «pb»  
 figures: «figure»  
 iso-fs: «fLib» «fs» «fvLib»  
 linking: «alt» «altGrp» «anchor» «join» «joinGrp» «link» «linkGrp» «timeline»  
 textstructure: «byline» «closer» «div» «docAuthor» «docDate» «docEdition»  
                 «docImprint» «docTitle» «epigraph» «postscript» «signed» «titlePage» «titlePart»  
                 «trailer»

*Declaration*

```

element back
{
    att.global.attributes,
    att.declaring.attributes,
    (
        ( model.frontPart | model.pLike.front | model.global )*,
        (
            (
                ( model.div1Like ),
                ( model.frontPart | model.div1Like | model.global )*
            )
        )
    )
}
    
```

```

        | (
          ( model.divLike ),
          ( model.frontPart | model.divLike | model.global ) *
        )
      )?
    ),
    ( ( ( model.divBottomPart ), ( model.divBottomPart | model.global ) * )? )
  )
}

```

*Example* `<back xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns221="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">`

```

<div1 type="appendix">
  <head>The Golden Dream or, the Ingenuous Confession</head>
  <p>To shew the Depravity of human Nature </p>
</div1>
<div1 type="epistle">
  <head>A letter from the Printer, which he desires may be inserted</head>
  <salute>Sir.</salute>
  <p>I have done with your Copy, so you may return it to the Vatican, if
you please </p>
</div1>
<div1 type="advert">
  <head>The Books usually read by the Scholars of Mrs Two-Shoes are these
and are sold at Mr
  Newbery's at the Bible and Sun in St Paul's Church-yard.</head>
  <list>
    <item n="1">The Christmas Box, Price 1d.</item>
    <item n="2">The History of Giles Gingerbread, 1d.</item>
    <item n="42">A Curious Collection of Travels, selected from the
Writers of all Nations,
    10 Vol, Pr. bound 1l.</item>
  </list>
</div1>
<div1 type="advert">
  <head>
    <hi rend="center">By the KING's Royal Patent,</hi> Are sold by J.
NEWBERY, at the
    Bible and Sun in St. Paul's Church-Yard.</head>
  <list>
    <item n="1">Dr. James's Powders for Fevers, the Small-Pox, Measles,
Colds, &c.
    2s. 6d</item>
    <item n="2">Dr. Hooper's Female Pills, 1s.</item>
  </list>
</div1>
</back>

```

*Note* The content model of back matter is identical to that of front matter, reflecting the facts of cultural history.

**<bibl>** (bibliographic citation) contains a loosely-structured bibliographic citation of which the sub-components may or may not be explicitly tagged.

*Module core*

*Used by* «model.biblLike» «model.msItemPart» «model.personPart»

May contain

analysis: «S» «ana» «c» «m» «pc» «phr» «s» «span» «tok» «w»  
 core: «abbr» «add» «address» «author» «biblScope» «cb» «choice» «corr» «date»  
 «del» «distinct» «editor» «email» «emph» «expan» «foreign» «gap» «gloss» «hi»  
 «lb» «measure» «measureGrp» «meeting» «mentioned» «milestone» «name»  
 «note» «num» «orig» «pb» «ptr» «pubPlace» «publisher» «ref» «reg»  
 «relatedItem» «respStmnt» «rs» «series» «sic» «soCalled» «term» «time» «title»  
 «unclear»  
 figures: «figure»  
 header: «distributor» «edition» «extent» «funder» «idno» «principal» «sponsor»  
 iso-fs: «fLib» «fs» «fvLib»  
 linking: «alt» «altGrp» «anchor» «join» «joinGrp» «link» «linkGrp» «seg» «timeline»

Declaration

```

element bibl
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  (
    text
    | model.gLike      | model.highlighted      | model.pPart.data      | model.pPart.e
  )
}

```

**Example** `<bibl xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns223="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">Blain, Clements and Grundy: Feminist Companion to Literature in English (Yale, 1990)</bibl>`

**Example** `<bibl xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns223="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">  
 <title level="a">The Interesting story of the Children in the Wood</title>. In  
 <author>Victor E Neuberg</author>, <title>The Penny Histories</title>.  
 <publisher>OUP</publisher>  
 <date>1968</date>.  
 </bibl>`

**Note** Contains phrase-level elements, together with any combination of elements from the *biblPart* class

**<biblFull>** (fully-structured bibliographic citation) contains a fully-structured bibliographic citation, in which all components of the TEI file description are present.

Module header

Used by «model.biblLike»

May contain

header: «editionStmnt» «extent» «notesStmnt» «publicationStmnt» «seriesStmnt»  
 «sourceDesc» «titleStmnt»

Declaration

```

element biblFull
{
  att.global.attributes,

```

```

    att.declarable.attributes,
    (
      (
        titleStmt,
        editionStmt?,
        extent?,
        publicationStmt,
        seriesStmt?,
        notesStmt?
      ),
      sourceDesc*
    )
  }

```

```

Example <biblFull xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"
xmlns:ns225="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <titleStmt>
    <title>The Feminist Companion to Literature in English:  women writers
from the middle ages
      to the present</title>
    <author>Blain, Virginia</author>
    <author>Clements, Patricia</author>
    <author>Grundy, Isobel</author>
  </titleStmt>
  <editionStmt>
    <edition>UK edition</edition>
  </editionStmt>
  <extent>1231 pp</extent>
  <publicationStmt>
    <publisher>Yale University Press</publisher>
    <pubPlace>New Haven and London</pubPlace>
    <date>1990</date>
  </publicationStmt>
  <sourceDesc>
    <p>No source:  this is an original work</p>
  </sourceDesc>
</biblFull>

```

**<biblScope>** (scope of citation) defines the scope of a bibliographic reference, for example as a list of page numbers, or a named subdivision of a larger work.

*Module core*

*Used by* «monogr» «series» «model.imprintPart»

*May contain*

analysis: «S» «ana» «c» «m» «pc» «phr» «s» «span» «tok» «w»

core: «abbr» «add» «address» «binaryObject» «cb» «choice» «corr» «date» «del»  
 «distinct» «email» «emph» «expan» «foreign» «gap» «gloss» «graphic» «hi» «lb»  
 «measure» «measureGrp» «mentioned» «milestone» «name» «note» «num» «orig»  
 «pb» «ptr» «ref» «reg» «rs» «sic» «soCalled» «term» «time» «title» «unclear»

figures: «figure» «formula»

iso-fs: «fLib» «fs» «fvLib»

linking: «alt» «altGrp» «anchor» «join» «joinGrp» «link» «linkGrp» «seg» «timeline»

*Declaration*

```

element biblScope
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute type
  {
    "vol" | "issue" | "pp" | "ll" | "chap" | "part" | xsd:Name
  }?,
  attribute from { token { pattern = "(\\p{L}|\\p{N}|\\p{P}|\\p{S})+" } }?,
  attribute to { token { pattern = "(\\p{L}|\\p{N}|\\p{P}|\\p{S})+" } }?,
  macro.phraseSeq
}

```

*Example* `<biblScope xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns227="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">pp 12-34</biblScope>`  
`<biblScope type="pp" from="12" to="34"/>`  
`<biblScope type="vol">II</biblScope>`  
`<biblScope type="pp">12</biblScope>`

**<biblStruct>** (structured bibliographic citation) contains a structured bibliographic citation, in which only bibliographic sub-elements appear and in a specified order.

*Module core*

*Used by* «model.biblLike»

*May contain*

core: «analytic» «monogr» «note» «relatedItem» «series»

header: «idno»

*Declaration*

```

element biblStruct
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  (
    analytic*,
    ( monogr, series* )+,
    ( model.noteLike | idno | relatedItem )*
  )
}

```

*Example* `<biblStruct xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns234="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">`  
`<monogr>`  
`<author>Blain, Virginia</author>`  
`<author>Clements, Patricia</author>`  
`<author>Grundy, Isobel</author>`  
`<title>The Feminist Companion to Literature in English: women writers`  
`from the middle ages`  
`to the present</title>`  
`<edition>first edition</edition>`  
`<imprint>`  
`<publisher>Yale University Press</publisher>`  
`<pubPlace>New Haven and London</pubPlace>`  
`<date>1990</date>`

```

</imprint>
</monogr>
</biblStruct>

```

**<binaryObject>** provides encoded binary data representing an inline graphic or other object.

*Module* core

*Used by* «model.graphicLike» «model.titlepagePart»

*May contain* Character data only

*Declaration*

```

element binaryObject
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.internetMedia.attributes,
  attribute width
  {
    token
    {
      pattern = "[\-\+]?d+(\.\d+)?(%|cm|mm|in|pt|pc|px|em|ex|gd|rem|vw|vh|vm)"
    }
  }?,
  attribute height
  {
    token
    {
      pattern = "[\-\+]?d+(\.\d+)?(%|cm|mm|in|pt|pc|px|em|ex|gd|rem|vw|vh|vm)"
    }
  }?,
  attribute scale
  {
    xsd:double | token { pattern = "(\-?[d]+/\-?[d]+)" } | xsd:decimal
  }?,
  attribute encoding
  {
    list { token { pattern = "(\\p{L}|\\p{N}|\\p{P}|\\p{S})+" }+ }
  }?,
  text
}

```

```

Example <binaryObject mimeType="image/gif"
xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"
xmlns:ns236="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
R0lGODdhMAAwAPAAAAAAP///ywAAAAAMAAwAAAC8IyPqcvt3wCcDkiLc7C0qwy
GHhSWpjQu5yqmCYsapyuvUUlvoNmOZtfzgFzByTB10QgxOR0TqBQejhRNzOfkVJ
+5YiUqrXF5Y5lKh/DeuNcP5yLWGsEbtLiOSpa/TPg7JpJHxyendzWTBfX0cxOnK
PjgBzi4diinWGdkF8kjdfnycQZXZeYGejmJlZeG19i2icVqaNVailT6F5iJ90m6
mvuTS4OK05M0vDk0Q4XUtwvKOzrcd3iq9uisF81M10Icr71EewwcLp7tuNNkM3u
Nna3F2JQFo97Vriy/Xl4/f1cf5VWzXyym7PH hhx4dbgYKAAA7</binaryObject>

```

*Note* The MIME media type specified on the **mimeType** attribute should describe the object after it has been decoded.

**<body>** (text body) contains the whole body of a single unitary text, excluding any front or back matter.

*Module* textstructure

*Used by* <text>

*May contain*

**analysis:** <span>

**core:** <bibl> <biblStruct> <cb> <cit> <desc> <divGen> <gap> <head> <l> <label> <lb> <lg> <list> <listBibl> <meeting> <milestone> <note> <p> <pb> <q> <quote> <said> <sp> <stage>

**figures:** <figure> <table>

**header:** <biblFull>

**iso-fs:** <fLib> <fs> <fvLib>

**linking:** <ab> <alt> <altGrp> <anchor> <join> <joinGrp> <link> <linkGrp> <timeline>

**textstructure:** <byline> <closer> <dateline> <div> <docAuthor> <docDate> <epigraph> <opener> <postscript> <salute> <signed> <trailer>

*Declaration*

```

element body
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  (
    model.global*,
    ( ( model.divTop ), ( model.global | model.divTop )* )?,
    ( ( model.divGenLike ), ( model.global | model.divGenLike )* )?,
    (
      ( ( model.divLike ), ( model.global | model.divGenLike )* )+
      | ( ( model.div1Like ), ( model.global | model.divGenLike )* )+
      | (
          ( ( model.common ), model.global* )+,
          (
            ( ( model.divLike ), ( model.global | model.divGenLike )* )+
            | ( ( model.div1Like ), ( model.global | model.divGenLike )* )+
          )?
        )
    ),
    ( ( model.divBottom ), model.global* )*
  )
}

```

*Example* <body xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns239="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">  
 <l>Nu scylun hergan hefaenricaes uard</l>  
 <l>metudæs maecti end his modgidanc</l>  
 <l>uerc uuldurfadur sue he uundra gihuaes</l>  
 <l>eci dryctin or astelidæ</l>  
 <l>he aerist scop aelda barnum</l>  
 <l>heben til hrofe haleg scepen.</l>  
 <l>tha middungeard moncynnæs uard</l>  
 <l>eci dryctin æfter tiadæ</l>  
 <l>firum foldu frea allmectig</l>  
 <trailer>primo cantauit Cædmon istud carmen.</trailer>  
 </body>



**<byline>** contains the primary statement of responsibility given for a work on its title page or at the head or end of the work.

*Module* textstructure

*Used by* «opener»«model.divWrapper» «model.titlepagePart» «model.pLike.front»

*May contain*

analysis: «S» «ana» «c» «m» «pc» «phr» «s» «span» «tok» «w»

core: «abbr» «add» «address» «binaryObject» «cb» «choice» «corr» «date» «del»  
 «distinct» «email» «emph» «expan» «foreign» «gap» «gloss» «graphic» «hi» «lb»  
 «measure» «measureGrp» «mentioned» «milestone» «name» «note» «num» «orig»  
 «pb» «ptr» «ref» «reg» «rs» «sic» «soCalled» «term» «time» «title» «unclear»

figures: «figure» «formula»

iso-fs: «fLib» «fs» «fvLib»

linking: «alt» «altGrp» «anchor» «join» «joinGrp» «link» «linkGrp» «seg» «timeline»

textstructure: «docAuthor»

*Declaration*

```

element byline
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( text | model.gLike | model.phrase | docAuthor | model.global ) *
}

```

*Example* **<byline** xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns241="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">Written by a CITIZEN who continued all the while in London. Never made public before.</b>**>**

*Example* **<byline** xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns241="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">Written from her own MEMORANDUMS</b>**>**

*Example* **<byline** xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns241="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">By George Jones, Political Editor, in Washington</b>**>**

*Example* **<byline** xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns241="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">BY  
**<docAuthor>**THOMAS PHILIPOTT,**</docAuthor>**  
 Master of Arts,  
 (Sometimes)  
 Of Clare-Hall in Cambridge.</b>**>**

*Note* The byline on a title page may include either the name or a description for the document's author. Where the name is included, it may optionally be tagged using the **<docAuthor>** element.

**<C>** (character) represents a character.

*Module* analysis

*Used by* «m» «pc» «tok» «w»«model.segLike»

*May contain* Empty element

*Declaration*

```

element c
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.segLike.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  macro.xtext }

```

```

Example <phr xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"
xmlns:ns242="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <c>M</c>
  <c>O</c>
  <c>A</c>
  <c>I</c>
  <w>doth</w>
  <w>sway</w>
  <w>my</w>
  <w>life</w>
</phr>

```

*Note* Contains a single character, a <g> element, or a sequence of graphemes to be treated as a single character. The **type** attribute is used to indicate the function of this segmentation, taking values such as **letter**, **punctuation**, or **digit** etc.

**<cRefPattern>** (canonical reference pattern) specifies an expression and replacement pattern for transforming a canonical reference into a URI.

*Module header*

*Used by* «refsDecl»

*May contain*

core: «p»

linking: «ab»

*Declaration*

```

element cRefPattern
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute matchPattern { token },
  attribute replacementPattern { text },
  model.pLike*
}

```

```

Example <cRefPattern
  matchPattern="([1-9A-Za-z]+)\s+([0-9]+):([0-9]+)"
  replacementPattern="#xpath(//div[@type='book'][@n='$1']/div[@type='chap'][@n='$2']/di
xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"
xmlns:ns244="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0"/>

```

*Note* The result of the substitution may be either an absolute or a relative URI reference. In the latter case it is combined with the value of **xml:base** in force at the place where the **cRef** attribute occurs to form an absolute URI in the usual manner as prescribed by XML Base.

**<catDesc>** (category description) describes some category within a taxonomy or text typology, either in the form of a brief prose description or in terms of the situational parameters used by the TEI formal textDesc.

*Module header*

*Used by* «category»

*May contain*

**core:** «abbr» «address» «choice» «date» «distinct» «email» «emph» «expan»  
 «foreign» «gloss» «measure» «measureGrp» «mentioned» «name» «num» «ptr»  
 «ref» «rs» «soCalled» «term» «time» «title»

*Declaration*

```

element catDesc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( text | model.limitedPhrase | model.catDescPart ) *
}

```

*Example* `<catDesc xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns247="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">Prose reportage</catDesc>`

*Example* `<catDesc xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns247="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">  
 <textDesc n="novel">  
 <channel mode="w">print; part issues</channel>  
 <constitution type="single"/>  
 <derivation type="original"/>  
 <domain type="art"/>  
 <factuality type="fiction"/>  
 <interaction type="none"/>  
 <preparedness type="prepared"/>  
 <purpose type="entertain" degree="high"/>  
 <purpose type="inform" degree="medium"/>  
 </textDesc>  
</catDesc>`

**<catRef/>** (category reference) specifies one or more defined categories within some taxonomy or text typology.

*Module header*

*Used by* «textClass»

*May contain* Empty element

*Declaration*

```

element catRef
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute target { list { xsd:anyURI+ } },
  attribute scheme { xsd:anyURI }?,
  empty
}

```

*Example* `<catRef target="#news #prov #sales2" xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"`

```

xmlns:ns248="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0"/>
<!-- elsewhere -->
<taxonomy>
  <category xml:id="news">
    <catDesc>Newspapers</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="prov">
    <catDesc>Provincial</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="sales2">
    <catDesc>Low to average annual sales</catDesc>
  </category>
</taxonomy>

```

*Note* The scheme attribute need be supplied only if more than one taxonomy has been declared

**<category>** contains an individual descriptive category, possibly nested within a superordinate category, within a user-defined taxonomy.

*Module header*

*Used by* «category» «taxonomy»

*May contain*

core: «desc» «gloss»

header: «catDesc» «category»

*Declaration*

```

element category
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( ( catDesc+ | model.glossLike* ), category* )
}

```

*Example* `<category xml:id="b1" xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns250="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">  
<catDesc>Prose reportage</catDesc>  
</category>`

*Example* `<category xml:id="b2" xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns250="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">  
<catDesc>Prose </catDesc>  
<category xml:id="b11">  
 <catDesc>journalism</catDesc>  
</category>  
<category xml:id="b12">  
 <catDesc>fiction</catDesc>  
</category>  
</category>`

*Example* `<category xml:id="LIT" xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns250="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">  
<catDesc xml:lang="pl">literatura piękna</catDesc>  
<catDesc xml:lang="en">fiction</catDesc>  
<category xml:id="LPROSE">  
 <catDesc xml:lang="pl">proza</catDesc>  
 <catDesc xml:lang="en">prose</catDesc>  
</category>`

```

<category xml:id="LPOETRY">
  <catDesc xml:lang="pl">poezja</catDesc>
  <catDesc xml:lang="en">poetry</catDesc>
</category>
<category xml:id="LDRAMA">
  <catDesc xml:lang="pl">dramat</catDesc>
  <catDesc xml:lang="en">drama</catDesc>
</category>
</category>

```

**<cb/>** (column break) marks the boundary between one column of a text and the next in a standard reference system.

*Module* core

*Used by* «model.milestoneLike»

*May contain* Empty element

*Declaration*

```

element cb
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.sourced.attributes,
  empty
}

```

*Example* Markup of an early English dictionary printed in two columns:

```

<pb xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"
xmlns:ns251="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0"/>
<cb n="1"/>
<entryFree>
  <form>Well</form>, <sense>a Pit to hold Spring-Water</sense>:
<sense>In the Art of <hi rend="italic">War</hi>, a Depth the Miner
  sinks into the Ground, to find out and disappoint the Enemies Mines,
  or to prepare one</sense>.
</entryFree>
<entryFree>To <form>Welter</form>, <sense>to wallow</sense>, or
<sense>lie groveling</sense>.</entryFree>
<!-- remainder of column -->
<cb n="2"/>
<entryFree>
  <form>Wey</form>, <sense>the greatest Measure for dry Things,
  containing five Chaldron</sense>.
</entryFree>
<entryFree>
  <form>Whale</form>, <sense>the greatest of
  Sea-Fishes</sense>.
</entryFree>

```

*Note* On this element, the global **n** attribute indicates the number or other value associated with the column which follows the point of insertion of this **<cb>** element. Encoders should adopt a clear and consistent policy as to whether the numbers associated with column breaks relate to the physical sequence number of the column in the whole text, or whether columns are numbered within the page. By convention, the **<cb>** element is placed at the head of the column to which it refers.

**<cell>** contains one cell of a table.

*Module* figures

*Used by* «row»

*May contain*

**analysis:** «S» «ana» «c» «m» «pc» «phr» «s» «span» «tok» «w»

**core:** «abbr» «add» «address» «bibl» «biblStruct» «binaryObject» «cb» «choice» «cit»  
«corr» «date» «del» «desc» «distinct» «email» «emph» «expan» «foreign» «gap»  
«gloss» «graphic» «hi» «label» «lb» «list» «listBibl» «measure» «measureGrp»  
«mentioned» «milestone» «name» «note» «num» «orig» «pb» «ptr» «q» «quote»  
«ref» «reg» «rs» «said» «sic» «soCalled» «stage» «term» «time» «title» «unclear»

**figures:** «figure» «formula» «table»

**header:** «biblFull»

**iso-fs:** «fLib» «fs» «fvLib»

**linking:** «alt» «altGrp» «anchor» «join» «joinGrp» «link» «linkGrp» «seg» «timeline»

*Declaration*

```
element cell
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.tableDecoration.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}

```

*Example* `<row xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"
xmlns:ns253="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
<cell role="label">General conduct</cell>
<cell role="data">Not satisfactory, on account of his great unpunctuality
and inattention to duties</cell>
</row>`

**<change>** summarizes a particular change or correction made to a particular version of an electronic text which is shared between several researchers.

*Module* header

*Used by* «revisionDesc»

*May contain*

**analysis:** «span»

**core:** «abbr» «address» «bibl» «biblStruct» «cb» «choice» «cit» «date» «desc»  
«distinct» «email» «emph» «expan» «foreign» «gap» «gloss» «label» «lb» «list»  
«listBibl» «measure» «measureGrp» «mentioned» «milestone» «name» «note»  
«num» «pb» «ptr» «q» «quote» «ref» «rs» «said» «soCalled» «stage» «term»  
«time» «title»

**figures:** «figure» «table»

**header:** «biblFull»

**iso-fs:** «fLib» «fs» «fvLib»

**linking:** «alt» «altGrp» «anchor» «join» «joinGrp» «link» «linkGrp» «timeline»

*Declaration*

```
element change
{

```

```

att.global.attributes,
att.ascribed.attributes,
att.dateable.attributes,
( text | model.limitedPhrase | model.inter | model.global ) *
}

```

*Example* `<titleStmt xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns255="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">`  
`<title> ... </title>`  
`<editor xml:id="LDB">Lou Burnard</editor>`  
`<respStmt xml:id="BZ">`  
`<resp>copy editing</resp>`  
`<name>Brett Zamir</name>`  
`</respStmt>`  
`</titleStmt>`  
`<!-- ... -->`  
`<revisionDesc>`  
`<change who="#BZ" when="2008-02-02">Finished chapter 23</change>`  
`<change who="#BZ" when="2008-01-02">Finished chapter 2</change>`  
`<change n="P2.2" when="1991-12-21" who="#LDB">Added examples to section 3</change>`  
`<change when="1991-11-11" who="#MSM">Deleted chapter 10</change>`  
`</revisionDesc>`

*Note* The **who** attribute may be used to point to any other element, but will typically specify a `<respStmt>` or `<person>` element elsewhere in the header, identifying the person responsible for the change and their role in making it. It is recommended that changes be recorded with the most recent first.

**<choice>** groups a number of alternative encodings for the same point in a text.

*Module* core

*Used by* «choice»«model.pPart.editorial»

*May contain*

core: «abbr» «choice» «corr» «expan» «orig» «reg» «sic» «unclear»

linking: «seg»

*Declaration*

```

element choice { att.global.attributes, ( model.choicePart | choice ) * }

```

*Example* An American encoding of *Gulliver's Travels* which retains the British spelling but also provides a version regularized to American spelling might be encoded as follows.

```

<p xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"
xmlns:ns257="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">Lastly, That, upon his solemn
oath to observe all the above
articles, the said man-mountain shall have a daily allowance of
meat and drink sufficient for the support of <choice>
  <sic>1724</sic>
  <corr>1728</corr>
</choice> of our subjects,
with free access to our royal person, and other marks of our
<choice>
  <orig>favour</orig>
  <reg>favor</reg>
</choice>.</p>

```

*Note* Because the children of a <choice> element all represent alternative ways of encoding the same sequence, it is natural to think of them as mutually exclusive. However, there may be cases where a full representation of a text requires the alternative encodings to be considered as parallel. Note also that <choice> elements may self-nest. For a specialized version of <choice> for encoding multiple witnesses of a single work, see section «TCAPLL».

**<cit>** (cited quotation) contains a quotation from some other document, together with a bibliographic reference to its source. In a dictionary it may contain an example text with at least one occurrence of the word form, used in the sense being described, or a translation of the headword, or an example.

*Module* core

*Used by* «model.quoteLike» «model.entryPart.top»

*May contain*

analysis: «span»

core: «bibl» «biblStruct» «cb» «cit» «gap» «lb» «milestone» «note» «pb» «ptr» «q»  
«quote» «ref» «said»

figures: «figure»

header: «biblFull»

iso-fs: «fLib» «fs» «fvLib»

linking: «alt» «altGrp» «anchor» «join» «joinGrp» «link» «linkGrp» «timeline»

*Declaration*

```

element cit
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  (
    model.qLike      | model.biblLike      | model.ptrLike      | model.global      | m
  )
}

```

*Example* `<cit xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns258="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">  
<quote>and the breath of the whale is frequently attended with such an insupportable smell,  
as to bring on disorder of the brain.</quote>  
<bibl>Ulloa's South America</bibl>  
</cit>`

*Example* `<entry xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns258="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">  
<form>  
<orth>horrifier</orth>  
</form>  
<cit type="translation" xml:lang="en">  
<quote>to horrify</quote>  
</cit>  
<cit type="example">  
<quote>elle était horrifiée par la dépense</quote>  
<cit type="translation" xml:lang="en">  
<quote>she was horrified at the expense.</quote>  
</cit>`



```
</cit>
</entry>
```

**<classCode>** (classification code) contains the classification code used for this text in some standard classification system.

*Module header*

*Used by* «textClass»

*May contain*

analysis: «span»

core: «abbr» «address» «cb» «choice» «date» «distinct» «email» «emph» «expan»  
 «foreign» «gap» «gloss» «lb» «measure» «measureGrp» «mentioned» «milestone»  
 «name» «note» «num» «pb» «ptr» «ref» «rs» «soCalled» «term» «time» «title»

figures: «figure»

iso-fs: «fLib» «fs» «fvLib»

linking: «alt» «altGrp» «anchor» «join» «joinGrp» «link» «linkGrp» «timeline»

*Declaration*

```
element classCode
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute scheme { xsd:anyURI },
  macro.phraseSeq.limited}

```

*Example* `<classCode scheme="http://www.udc.org"
xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"
xmlns:ns260="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">410</classCode>`

**<classDecl>** (classification declarations) contains one or more taxonomies defining any classificatory codes used elsewhere in the text.

*Module header*

*Used by* «model.encodingDescPart»

*May contain*

header: «taxonomy»

*Declaration*

```
element classDecl { att.global.attributes, taxonomy+ }
```

*Example* `<classDecl xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"
xmlns:ns262="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
 <taxonomy xml:id="LCSH">
 <bibl>Library of Congress Subject Headings</bibl>
 </taxonomy>
</classDecl>
<!-- ... -->
<textClass>
 <keywords scheme="#LCSH">
 <list>
 <item>Political science</item>`

```

    <item>United States - Politics and government --
      Revolution, 1775-1783</item>
  </list>
</keywords>
</textClass>

```

**<closer>** groups together salutations, datelines, and similar phrases appearing as a final group at the end of a division, especially of a letter.

*Module* textstructure

*Used by* «model.divBottomPart»

*May contain*

**analysis:** «S» «ana» «c» «m» «pc» «phr» «s» «span» «tok» «w»

**core:** «abbr» «add» «address» «binaryObject» «cb» «choice» «corr» «date» «del»  
 «distinct» «email» «emph» «expan» «foreign» «gap» «gloss» «graphic» «hi» «lb»  
 «measure» «measureGrp» «mentioned» «milestone» «name» «note» «num» «orig»  
 «pb» «ptr» «ref» «reg» «rs» «sic» «soCalled» «term» «time» «title» «unclear»

**figures:** «figure» «formula»

**iso-fs:** «fLib» «fs» «fvLib»

**linking:** «alt» «altGrp» «anchor» «join» «joinGrp» «link» «linkGrp» «seg» «timeline»

**textstructure:** «dateline» «salute» «signed»

*Declaration*

```

element closer
{
  att.global.attributes,
  (
    text
    | model.gLike      | signed      | dateline      | salute      | model.phrase      | mo
  )
}

```

*Example* `<div type="letter" xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns263="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">`  
`<p> perhaps you will favour me with a sight of it when convenient.</p>`  
`<closer>`  
`<salute>I remain, &c. &c.</salute>`  
`<signed>H. Colburn</signed>`  
`</closer>`  
`</div>`

*Example* `<div type="chapter" xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns263="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">`  
`<p>`  
`<!-- .... -> and his heart was going like mad and yes I said yes I will`  
`Yes.</p>`  
`<closer>`  
`<dateline>`  
`<name type="place">Trieste-Zürich-Paris,</name>`  
`<date>1914-1921</date>`  
`</dateline>`  
`</closer>`  
`</div>`

**<corr>** (correction) contains the correct form of a passage apparently erroneous in the copy text.

*Module* core

*Used by* «model.pPart.transcriptional» «model.choicePart»

*May contain*

**analysis:** «S» «ana» «c» «m» «pc» «phr» «s» «span» «tok» «w»

**core:** «abbr» «add» «address» «bibl» «biblStruct» «binaryObject» «cb» «choice» «cit» «corr» «date» «del» «desc» «distinct» «email» «emph» «expan» «foreign» «gap» «gloss» «graphic» «hi» «label» «lb» «list» «listBibl» «measure» «measureGrp» «mentioned» «milestone» «name» «note» «num» «orig» «pb» «ptr» «q» «quote» «ref» «reg» «rs» «said» «sic» «soCalled» «stage» «term» «time» «title» «unclear»

**figures:** «figure» «formula» «table»

**header:** «biblFull»

**iso-fs:** «fLib» «fs» «fvLib»

**linking:** «alt» «altGrp» «anchor» «join» «joinGrp» «link» «linkGrp» «seg» «timeline»

*Declaration*

```

element corr
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}

```

*Example* If all that is desired is to call attention to the fact that the copy text has been corrected, <corr> may be used alone:

```

I don't know,
Juan. It's so far in the past now -- how <corr
xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"
xmlns:ns264="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">can we</corr> prove
or disprove anyone's theories?

```

*Example* It is also possible, using the <choice> and <sic> elements, to provide an uncorrected reading:

```

I don't know, Juan. It's so far in the past now --
how <choice xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"
xmlns:ns264="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <sic>we can</sic>
  <corr>can we</corr>
</choice> prove or
disprove anyone's theories?

```

**<correction>** (correction principles) states how and under what circumstances corrections have been made in the text.

*Module* header

*Used by* «model.editorialDeclPart»

*May contain*

**core:** «p»

**linking:** «ab»

*Declaration*

```

element correction
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  attribute status { "high" | "medium" | "low" | "unknown" }?,
  attribute method { "silent" | "markup" }?,
  model.pLike+
}

```

*Example* `<correction xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns266="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">`  
`<p>Errors in transcription controlled by using the WordPerfect spelling checker, with a user defined dictionary of 500 extra words taken from Chambers Twentieth Century Dictionary.</p>`  
`</correction>`

*Note* May be used to note the results of proof reading the text against its original, indicating (for example) whether discrepancies have been silently rectified, or recorded using the editorial tags described in section «COED».

**<creation>** contains information about the creation of a text.

*Module header*

*Used by* «profileDesc»

*May contain*

analysis: «span»

core: «abbr» «address» «cb» «choice» «date» «distinct» «email» «emph» «expan»  
 «foreign» «gap» «gloss» «lb» «measure» «measureGrp» «mentioned» «milestone»  
 «name» «note» «num» «pb» «ptr» «ref» «rs» «soCalled» «term» «time» «title»

figures: «figure»

iso-fs: «fLib» «fs» «fvLib»

linking: «alt» «altGrp» «anchor» «join» «joinGrp» «link» «linkGrp» «timeline»

*Declaration*

```

element creation { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq.limited }

```

*Example* `<creation xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns269="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">`  
`<date>Before 1987</date>`  
`</creation>`

*Example* `<creation xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns269="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">`  
`<date when="1988-07-10">10 July 1988</date>`  
`</creation>`

*Note* Character data and phrase-level elements. The <creation> element may be used to record details of a text's creation, e.g. the date and place it was composed, if these are of interest; it should not be confused with the <publicationStmnt> element, which records date and place of publication.

**<date>** contains a date in any format.

*Module* core

*Used by* «model.dateLike» «model.publicationStmtPart»

*May contain*

**analysis:** «S» «ana» «c» «m» «pc» «phr» «s» «span» «tok» «w»

**core:** «abbr» «add» «address» «binaryObject» «cb» «choice» «corr» «date» «del»  
 «distinct» «email» «emph» «expan» «foreign» «gap» «gloss» «graphic» «hi» «lb»  
 «measure» «measureGrp» «mentioned» «milestone» «name» «note» «num» «orig»  
 «pb» «ptr» «ref» «reg» «rs» «sic» «soCalled» «term» «time» «title» «unclear»

**figures:** «figure» «formula»

**iso-fs:** «fLib» «fs» «fvLib»

**linking:** «alt» «altGrp» «anchor» «join» «joinGrp» «link» «linkGrp» «seg» «timeline»

*Declaration*

```

element date
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.dateable.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  attribute calendar
  {
    "Gregorian"
  | "Julian"
  | "Islamic"
  | "Hebrew"
  | "Revolutionary"
  | "Iranian"
  | "Coptic"
  | "Chinese"
  | xsd:Name
  }?,
  ( text | model.gLike | model.phrase | model.global )*
}

```

*Example* `<date when="1980-02" xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns270="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">early February 1980</date>`

*Example* Given on the `<date when="1977-06-12" xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns270="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">Twelfth Day of June in the Year of Our Lord One Thousand Nine Hundred and Seventy-seven of the Republic the Two Hundredth and first and of the University the Eighty-Sixth.</date>`

*Example* `<date when="1990-09" xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns270="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">September 1990</date>`

**<dateline>** contains a brief description of the place, date, time, etc. of production of a letter, newspaper story, or other work, prefixed or suffixed to it as a kind of heading or trailer.

*Module* textstructure

Used by «closer» «opener» «model.divWrapper»

May contain

analysis: «S» «ana» «c» «m» «pc» «phr» «s» «span» «tok» «w»  
 core: «abbr» «add» «address» «binaryObject» «cb» «choice» «corr» «date» «del»  
 «distinct» «email» «emph» «expan» «foreign» «gap» «gloss» «graphic» «hi» «lb»  
 «measure» «measureGrp» «mentioned» «milestone» «name» «note» «num» «orig»  
 «pb» «ptr» «ref» «reg» «rs» «sic» «soCalled» «term» «time» «title» «unclear»  
 figures: «figure» «formula»  
 iso-fs: «fLib» «fs» «fvLib»  
 linking: «alt» «altGrp» «anchor» «join» «joinGrp» «link» «linkGrp» «seg» «timeline»

Declaration

```
element dateline { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```

*Example* `<dateline xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns273="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">Walden, this 29. of August 1592</dateline>`

*Example* `<div type="chapter" xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns273="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">  
 <p>  
 <!-- ... --> and his heart was going like mad and yes I said yes I will  
 Yes.</p>  
 <closer>  
 <dateline>  
 <name type="place">Trieste-Zürich-Paris,</name>  
 <date>1914-1921</date>  
 </dateline>  
 </closer>  
 </div>`

**<del>** (deletion) contains a letter, word, or passage deleted, marked as deleted, or otherwise indicated as superfluous or spurious in the copy text by an author, scribe, annotator, or corrector.

Module core

Used by «model.pPart.transcriptional»

May contain

analysis: «S» «ana» «c» «m» «pc» «phr» «s» «span» «tok» «w»  
 core: «abbr» «add» «address» «bibl» «biblStruct» «binaryObject» «cb» «choice» «cit»  
 «corr» «date» «del» «desc» «distinct» «email» «emph» «expan» «foreign» «gap»  
 «gloss» «graphic» «hi» «label» «lb» «list» «listBibl» «measure» «measureGrp»  
 «mentioned» «milestone» «name» «note» «num» «orig» «pb» «ptr» «q» «quote»  
 «ref» «reg» «rs» «said» «sic» «soCalled» «stage» «term» «time» «title» «unclear»  
 figures: «figure» «formula» «table»  
 header: «biblFull»  
 iso-fs: «fLib» «fs» «fvLib»  
 linking: «alt» «altGrp» «anchor» «join» «joinGrp» «link» «linkGrp» «seg» «timeline»

Declaration

```
element del  
{
```

```

att.global.attributes,
att.transcriptional.attributes,
att.typed.attributes,
macro.paraContent }

```

*Example* `<1 xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns274="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">  
 <del rend="overtyped">Mein</del> Frisch  
 <del rend="overstrike" type="primary">schwebt</del>  
 weht der Wind  
</1>`

*Note* Degrees of uncertainty over what can still be read may be indicated by use of the `<certainty>` element (see «CE»). This element should be used for deletion of shorter sequences of text, typically single words or phrases. The `<delSpan>` element should be used for longer sequences of text, for those containing structural subdivisions, and for those containing overlapping additions and deletions. The text deleted must be at least partially legible, in order for the encoder to be able to transcribe it. Illegible text within a deletion may be marked using the `<gap>` tag to signal that text is present but has not been transcribed. Attributes on the `<gap>` element may be used to indicate how much text is omitted, the reason for omitting it, etc. If text is not fully legible, the `<unclear>` element (available when using the additional tagset for transcription of primary sources) should be used to signal the areas of text which cannot be read with confidence in a similar way. See further sections «PHOM» and, for the close association of the `<del>` tag with the `<gap>`, `<damage>`, `<unclear>` and `<supplied>` elements (the latter three tags available when using the additional tagset for transcription of primary sources), «PHCOMB». The `<del>` tag should not be used for deletions made by editors or encoders. In these cases, either the `<corr>` tag or the `<gap>` tag should be used.

**<desc>** (description) contains a brief description of the object documented by its parent element, including its intended usage, purpose, or application where this is appropriate.

*Module core*

*Used by* «model.glossLike» «model.labelLike»

*May contain*

**core:** «abbr» «address» «bibl» «biblStruct» «choice» «cit» «date» «desc» «distinct» «email» «emph» «expan» «foreign» «gloss» «label» «list» «listBibl» «measure» «measureGrp» «mentioned» «name» «num» «ptr» «q» «quote» «ref» «rs» «said» «soCalled» «stage» «term» «time» «title»

**figures:** «table»

**header:** «biblFull»

*Declaration*

```

element desc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.translatable.attributes,
  macro.limitedContent }

```

*Example* `<desc xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns276="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">contains a brief description of`

the purpose and application for an element, attribute, attribute value, class, or entity.</desc>

*Note* TEI convention requires that this be expressed as a finite clause, beginning with an active verb.

**<distinct>** identifies any word or phrase which is regarded as linguistically distinct, for example as archaic, technical, dialectal, non-preferred, etc., or as forming part of a sublanguage.

*Module* core

*Used by* «model.emphLike»

*May contain*

**analysis:** «S» «ana» «c» «m» «pc» «phr» «s» «span» «tok» «w»

**core:** «abbr» «add» «address» «binaryObject» «cb» «choice» «corr» «date» «del»  
«distinct» «email» «emph» «expan» «foreign» «gap» «gloss» «graphic» «hi» «lb»  
«measure» «measureGrp» «mentioned» «milestone» «name» «note» «num» «orig»  
«pb» «ptr» «ref» «reg» «rs» «sic» «soCalled» «term» «time» «title» «unclear»

**figures:** «figure» «formula»

**iso-fs:** «fLib» «fs» «fvLib»

**linking:** «alt» «altGrp» «anchor» «join» «joinGrp» «link» «linkGrp» «seg» «timeline»

*Declaration*

```

element distinct
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute type { xsd:Name }?,
  attribute time { xsd:anyURI }?,
  attribute space { xsd:anyURI }?,
  attribute social { xsd:anyURI }?,
  macro.phraseSeq}

```

*Example* Next morning a boy

in that dormitory confided to his bosom friend, a  
**<distinct** type="ps\_slang" xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"  
 xmlns:ns278="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">fag</**distinct**> of Macrea's, that  
 there was trouble in their midst which King **<distinct** type="archaic">would  
 fain</**distinct**> keep secret.

**<distributor>** supplies the name of a person or other agency responsible for the distribution of a text.

*Module* header

*Used by* «model.imprintPart» «model.publicationStmtPart»

*May contain*

**analysis:** «S» «ana» «c» «m» «pc» «phr» «s» «span» «tok» «w»

**core:** «abbr» «add» «address» «binaryObject» «cb» «choice» «corr» «date» «del»  
«distinct» «email» «emph» «expan» «foreign» «gap» «gloss» «graphic» «hi» «lb»  
«measure» «measureGrp» «mentioned» «milestone» «name» «note» «num» «orig»  
«pb» «ptr» «ref» «reg» «rs» «sic» «soCalled» «term» «time» «title» «unclear»

**figures:** «figure» «formula»

**iso-fs:** «fLib» «fs» «fvLib»



linking: «alt» «altGrp» «anchor» «join» «joinGrp» «link» «linkGrp» «seg» «timeline»

*Declaration*

```
element distributor { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```

*Example* `<distributor xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns280="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">Oxford Text Archive</distributor><distributor>Redwood and Burn Ltd</distributor>`

**<div>** (text division) contains a subdivision of the front, body, or back of a text.

*Module* textstructure

*Used by* «model.divLike»

*May contain*

analysis: «span»

core: «bibl» «biblStruct» «cb» «cit» «desc» «divGen» «gap» «head» «l» «label» «lb» «lg» «list» «listBibl» «meeting» «milestone» «note» «p» «pb» «q» «quote» «said» «sp» «stage»

figures: «figure» «table»

header: «biblFull»

iso-fs: «fLib» «fs» «fvLib»

linking: «ab» «alt» «altGrp» «anchor» «join» «joinGrp» «link» «linkGrp» «timeline»

textstructure: «byline» «closer» «dateline» «div» «docAuthor» «docDate» «epigraph» «opener» «postscript» «salute» «signed» «trailer»

*Declaration*

```
element div
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.divLike.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  (
    ( model.divTop | model.global )*,
    (
      (
        ( ( model.divLike | model.divGenLike ), model.global* )+
        | (
          ( ( model.common ), model.global* )+,
          ( ( model.divLike | model.divGenLike ), model.global* )*
        )
      ),
      ( ( model.divBottom ), model.global* )*
    )?
  )
}
```

*Example* `<body xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns281="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0"><div type="part"><head>Fallacies of Authority</head><p>The subject of which is Authority in various shapes, and the object,`

```

to repress all
    exercise of the reasoning faculty.</p>
<div n="1" type="chapter">
  <head>The Nature of Authority</head>
  <p>With reference to any proposed measures having for their object the
greatest
    happiness of the greatest number....</p>
  <div n="1.1" type="section">
    <head>Analysis of Authority</head>
    <p>What on any given occasion is the legitimate weight or influence
to be attached to
      authority ... </p>
  </div>
  <div n="1.2" type="section">
    <head>Appeal to Authority, in What Cases Fallacious.</head>
    <p>Reference to authority is open to the charge of fallacy when...
</p>
  </div>
</div>
</div>
</div>
</body>

```

**<divGen>** (automatically generated text division) indicates the location at which a textual division generated automatically by a text-processing application is to appear.

*Module* core

*Used by* «model.frontPart» «model.divGenLike»

*May contain*

core: «head»

*Declaration*

```

element divGen
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute type { xsd:Name }?,
  model.headLike*
}

```

*Example* One use for this element is to allow document preparation software to generate an index and insert it in the appropriate place in the output. The example below assumes that the **indexName** attribute on <index> elements in the text has been used to specify index entries for the two generated indexes, named NAMES and THINGS:

```

<back xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"
xmlns:ns283="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <div1 type="backmat">
    <head>Bibliography</head>
    <listBibl>
      <bibl/>
    </listBibl>
  </div1>
  <div1 type="backmat">
    <head>Indices</head>
    <divGen n="Index Nominum" type="NAMES"/>

```

```
<divGen n="Index Rerum" type="THINGS"/>
</div1>
</back>
```

*Example* Another use for <divGen> is to specify the location of an automatically produced table of contents:

```
<front xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"
xmlns:ns283="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
<!--<titlePage>...</titlePage-->
<divGen type="toc"/>
<div>
<head>Preface</head>
<p> ... </p>
</div>
</front>
```

*Note* This element is intended primarily for use in document production or manipulation, rather than in the transcription of pre-existing materials; it makes it easier to specify the location of indices, tables of contents, etc., to be generated by text preparation or word processing software.

**<docAuthor>** (document author) contains the name of the author of the document, as given on the title page (often but not always contained in a byline).

*Module* textstructure

*Used by* «byline»«model.titlepagePart» «model.divWrapper» «model.pLike.front»

*May contain*

**analysis:** «S» «ana» «c» «m» «pc» «phr» «s» «span» «tok» «w»

**core:** «abbr» «add» «address» «binaryObject» «cb» «choice» «corr» «date» «del»  
«distinct» «email» «emph» «expan» «foreign» «gap» «gloss» «graphic» «hi» «lb»  
«measure» «measureGrp» «mentioned» «milestone» «name» «note» «num» «orig»  
«pb» «ptr» «ref» «reg» «rs» «sic» «soCalled» «term» «time» «title» «unclear»

**figures:** «figure» «formula»

**iso-fs:** «fLib» «fs» «fvLib»

**linking:** «alt» «altGrp» «anchor» «join» «joinGrp» «link» «linkGrp» «seg» «timeline»

*Declaration*

```
element docAuthor
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.canonical.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

*Example* <titlePage xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns285="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">  
<docTitle>  
<titlePart>Travels into Several Remote Nations of the World, in Four Parts.</titlePart>  
</docTitle>  
<byline> By <docAuthor>Lemuel Gulliver</docAuthor>, First a Surgeon, and then a Captain of several Ships</byline>  
</titlePage>

*Note* The document author's name often occurs within a byline, but the <docAuthor> element may be used whether the <byline> element is used or not.

**<docDate>** (document date) contains the date of a document, as given (usually) on a title page.

*Module* textstructure

*Used by* «docImprint» «model.titlepagePart» «model.divWrapper» «model.pLike.front»

*May contain*

**analysis:** «S» «ana» «c» «m» «pc» «phr» «s» «span» «tok» «w»

**core:** «abbr» «add» «address» «binaryObject» «cb» «choice» «corr» «date» «del»  
«distinct» «email» «emph» «expan» «foreign» «gap» «gloss» «graphic» «hi» «lb»  
«measure» «measureGrp» «mentioned» «milestone» «name» «note» «num» «orig»  
«pb» «ptr» «ref» «reg» «rs» «sic» «soCalled» «term» «time» «title» «unclear»

**figures:** «figure» «formula»

**iso-fs:** «fLib» «fs» «fvLib»

**linking:** «alt» «altGrp» «anchor» «join» «joinGrp» «link» «linkGrp» «seg» «timeline»

*Declaration*

```

element docDate
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute when
  {
    xsd:date
    | xsd:gYear
    | xsd:gMonth
    | xsd:gDay
    | xsd:gYearMonth
    | xsd:gMonthDay
    | xsd:time
    | xsd:dateTime
  }?,
  macro.phraseSeq}

```

*Example* <docImprint xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns287="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">Oxford, Clarendon Press, <docDate>1987</docDate> </docImprint>

*Note* Cf. the general <date> element in the core tag set. This specialized element is provided for convenience in marking and processing the date of the documents, since it is likely to require specialized handling for many applications.

**<docEdition>** (document edition) contains an edition statement as presented on a title page of a document.

*Module* textstructure

*Used by* «model.titlepagePart» «model.pLike.front»

*May contain*

**analysis:** «S» «ana» «c» «m» «pc» «phr» «s» «span» «tok» «w»

**core:** «abbr» «add» «address» «bibl» «biblStruct» «binaryObject» «cb» «choice» «cit»  
«corr» «date» «del» «desc» «distinct» «email» «emph» «expan» «foreign» «gap»

«gloss» «graphic» «hi» «label» «lb» «list» «listBibl» «measure» «measureGrp»  
 «mentioned» «milestone» «name» «note» «num» «orig» «pb» «ptr» «q» «quote»  
 «ref» «reg» «rs» «said» «sic» «soCalled» «stage» «term» «time» «title» «unclear»  
 figures: «figure» «formula» «table»  
 header: «biblFull»  
 iso-fs: «fLib» «fs» «fvLib»  
 linking: «alt» «altGrp» «anchor» «join» «joinGrp» «link» «linkGrp» «seg» «timeline»

*Declaration*

```
element docEdition { att.global.attributes, macro.paraContent }
```

*Example* `<docEdition xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns289="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">The Third edition Corrected</docEdition>`

*Note* Cf. the <edition> element of bibliographic citation. As usual, the shorter name has been given to the more frequent element.

**<docImprint>** (document imprint) contains the imprint statement (place and date of publication, publisher name), as given (usually) at the foot of a title page.

*Module* textstructure

*Used by* «model.titlepagePart» «model.pLike.front»

*May contain*

analysis: «S» «ana» «c» «m» «pc» «phr» «s» «span» «tok» «w»  
 core: «abbr» «add» «address» «binaryObject» «cb» «choice» «corr» «date» «del»  
 «distinct» «email» «emph» «expan» «foreign» «gap» «gloss» «graphic» «hi» «lb»  
 «measure» «measureGrp» «mentioned» «milestone» «name» «note» «num» «orig»  
 «pb» «ptr» «pubPlace» «publisher» «ref» «reg» «rs» «sic» «soCalled» «term»  
 «time» «title» «unclear»  
 figures: «figure» «formula»  
 iso-fs: «fLib» «fs» «fvLib»  
 linking: «alt» «altGrp» «anchor» «join» «joinGrp» «link» «linkGrp» «seg» «timeline»  
 textstructure: «docDate»

*Declaration*

```
element docImprint
{
  att.global.attributes,
  (
    text
    | model.gLike      | model.phrase      | pubPlace      | docDate      | publisher
  )
}
```

*Example* `<docImprint xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns290="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">Oxford, Clarendon Press, 1987</docImprint>`

Imprints may be somewhat more complex:

```
<docImprint xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"
xmlns:ns290="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
```

```

<pubPlace>London</pubPlace>
Printed for <name>E. Nutt</name>,
at
<pubPlace>Royal Exchange</pubPlace>;
<name>J. Roberts</name> in
<pubPlace>wick-Lane</pubPlace>;
<name>A. Dodd</name> without
<pubPlace>Temple-Bar</pubPlace>;
and <name>J. Graves</name> in
<pubPlace>St. James' s-street.</pubPlace>
<date>1722.</date>
</docImprint>

```

*Note* Cf. the <imprint> element of bibliographic citations. As with title, author, and editions, the shorter name is reserved for the element likely to be used more often.

**<docTitle>** (document title) contains the title of a document, including all its constituents, as given on a title page.

*Module* textstructure

*Used by* «model.titlepagePart» «model.pLike.front»

*May contain*

analysis: «span»

core: «cb» «gap» «lb» «milestone» «note» «pb»

figures: «figure»

iso-fs: «fLib» «fs» «fvLib»

linking: «alt» «altGrp» «anchor» «join» «joinGrp» «link» «linkGrp» «timeline»

textstructure: «titlePart»

*Declaration*

```

element docTitle
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.canonical.attributes,
  ( model.global*, ( titlePart, model.global* )+ )
}

```

*Example* <docTitle xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns291="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">  
 <titlePart type="main">The DUNCIAD, VARIOURVM.</titlePart>  
 <titlePart type="sub">WITH THE PROLEGOMENA of SCRIBLERUS.</titlePart>  
 </docTitle>

**<edition>** (edition) describes the particularities of one edition of a text.

*Module* header

*Used by* «editionStmt» «monogr»«model.biblPart»

*May contain*

analysis: «S» «ana» «c» «m» «pc» «phr» «s» «span» «tok» «w»

core: «abbr» «add» «address» «binaryObject» «cb» «choice» «corr» «date» «del»  
 «distinct» «email» «emph» «expan» «foreign» «gap» «gloss» «graphic» «hi» «lb»

«measure» «measureGrp» «mentioned» «milestone» «name» «note» «num» «orig»  
 «pb» «ptr» «ref» «reg» «rs» «sic» «soCalled» «term» «time» «title» «unclear»  
 figures: «figure» «formula»  
 iso-fs: «fLib» «fs» «fvLib»  
 linking: «alt» «altGrp» «anchor» «join» «joinGrp» «link» «linkGrp» «seg» «timeline»

*Declaration*

```
element edition { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```

*Example* `<edition xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns293="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">First edition <date>Oct 1990</date></edition><edition n="S2">Students' edition</edition>`

**<editionStmt>** (edition statement) groups information relating to one edition of a text.

*Module header*

*Used by* «biblFull» «fileDesc»

*May contain*

core: «p» «respStmt»  
 header: «edition»  
 linking: «ab»

*Declaration*

```
element editionStmt
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( model.pLike+ | ( edition, respStmt* ) )
}
```

*Example* `<editionStmt xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns294="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0"><edition n="S2">Students' edition</edition><respStmt><resp>Adapted by </resp><name>Elizabeth Kirk</name></respStmt></editionStmt>`

*Example* `<editionStmt xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns294="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0"><p>First edition, <date>Michaelmas Term, 1991.</date></p></editionStmt>`

**<editor>** secondary statement of responsibility for a bibliographic item, for example the name of an individual, institution or organization, (or of several such) acting as editor, compiler, translator, etc.

*Module core*

*Used by* «analytic» «monogr» «series» «model.respLike»

May contain

analysis: «S» «ana» «c» «m» «pc» «phr» «s» «span» «tok» «w»  
 core: «abbr» «add» «address» «binaryObject» «cb» «choice» «corr» «date» «del»  
 «distinct» «email» «emph» «expan» «foreign» «gap» «gloss» «graphic» «hi» «lb»  
 «measure» «measureGrp» «mentioned» «milestone» «name» «note» «num» «orig»  
 «pb» «ptr» «ref» «reg» «rs» «sic» «soCalled» «term» «time» «title» «unclear»  
 figures: «figure» «formula»  
 iso-fs: «fLib» «fs» «fvLib»  
 linking: «alt» «altGrp» «anchor» «join» «joinGrp» «link» «linkGrp» «seg» «timeline»

Declaration

```
element editor
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

*Example* `<editor xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"
xmlns:ns295="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">Eric Johnson</editor>
<editor role="illustrator">John Tenniel</editor>`

*Note* A consistent format should be adopted. Particularly where cataloguing is likely to be based on the content of the header, it is advisable to use generally recognized authority lists for the exact form of personal names.

**<editorialDecl>** (editorial practice declaration) provides details of editorial principles and practices applied during the encoding of a text.

Module header

Used by «model.encodingDescPart»

May contain

core: «p»  
 header: «correction» «hyphenation» «interpretation» «normalization» «quotation»  
 «segmentation» «stdVals»  
 linking: «ab»

Declaration

```
element editorialDecl
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  ( model.pLike | model.editorialDeclPart )+
}
```

*Example* `<editorialDecl xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"
xmlns:ns297="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
<normalization>
 <p>All words converted to Modern American spelling using
 Websters 9th Collegiate dictionary
 </p>
</normalization>
<quotation marks="all" form="std">`



```
<p>All opening quotation marks converted to " all closing
quotation marks converted to &cdq;.</p>
</quotation>
</editorialDecl>
```

**<email>** (electronic mail address) contains an e-mail address identifying a location to which e-mail messages can be delivered.

*Module* core

*Used by* «model.addressLike»

*May contain*

**analysis:** «S» «ana» «c» «m» «pc» «phr» «s» «span» «tok» «w»

**core:** «abbr» «add» «address» «binaryObject» «cb» «choice» «corr» «date» «del»  
«distinct» «email» «emph» «expan» «foreign» «gap» «gloss» «graphic» «hi» «lb»  
«measure» «measureGrp» «mentioned» «milestone» «name» «note» «num» «orig»  
«pb» «ptr» «ref» «reg» «rs» «sic» «soCalled» «term» «time» «title» «unclear»

**figures:** «figure» «formula»

**iso-fs:** «fLib» «fs» «fvLib»

**linking:** «alt» «altGrp» «anchor» «join» «joinGrp» «link» «linkGrp» «seg» «timeline»

*Declaration*

```
element email { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```

*Example* `<email xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"
xmlns:ns299="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">editors@tei-c.org</email>`

*Note* The format of a modern Internet email address is defined in RFC 2822

**<emph>** (emphasized) marks words or phrases which are stressed or emphasized for linguistic or rhetorical effect.

*Module* core

*Used by* «model.emphLike»

*May contain*

**analysis:** «S» «ana» «c» «m» «pc» «phr» «s» «span» «tok» «w»

**core:** «abbr» «add» «address» «bibl» «biblStruct» «binaryObject» «cb» «choice» «cit»  
«corr» «date» «del» «desc» «distinct» «email» «emph» «expan» «foreign» «gap»  
«gloss» «graphic» «hi» «label» «lb» «list» «listBibl» «measure» «measureGrp»  
«mentioned» «milestone» «name» «note» «num» «orig» «pb» «ptr» «q» «quote»  
«ref» «reg» «rs» «said» «sic» «soCalled» «stage» «term» «time» «title» «unclear»

**figures:** «figure» «formula» «table»

**header:** «biblFull»

**iso-fs:** «fLib» «fs» «fvLib»

**linking:** «alt» «altGrp» «anchor» «join» «joinGrp» «link» «linkGrp» «seg» «timeline»

*Declaration*

```
element emph { att.global.attributes, macro.paraContent }
```

*Example* You took the car and did `<emph xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns300="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">what</emph>?!!`

*Example* `<q xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns300="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">What it all comes to is this,</q>`  
 he said.  
`<q>`  
`<emph>What`  
 does Christopher Robin do in the morning nowadays?`</emph>`  
`</q>`

**<encodingDesc>** (encoding description) documents the relationship between an electronic text and the source or sources from which it was derived.

*Module* header

*Used by* «model.teiHeaderPart»

*May contain*

core: «p»

header: «appInfo» «classDecl» «editorialDecl» «geoDecl» «projectDesc» «refsDecl»  
 «samplingDecl» «tagsDecl»

iso-fs: «fsdDecl»

linking: «ab»

*Declaration*

```

element encodingDesc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( ( model.encodingDescPart | model.pLike )+ )
}

```

*Example* `<encodingDesc xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns301="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">`  
`<p>Basic encoding, capturing lexical information only. All`  
 hyphenation, punctuation, and variant spellings normalized. No  
 formatting or layout information preserved.`</p>`  
`</encodingDesc>`

**<epigraph>** contains a quotation, anonymous or attributed, appearing at the start of a section or chapter, or on a title page.

*Module* textstructure

*Used by* «opener» «model.divWrapper» «model.titlepagePart» «model.pLike.front»

*May contain*

analysis: «span»

core: «bibl» «biblStruct» «cb» «cit» «desc» «gap» «l» «label» «lb» «lg» «list»  
 «listBibl» «milestone» «note» «p» «pb» «q» «quote» «said» «sp» «stage»

figures: «figure» «table»

header: «biblFull»

iso-fs: «fLib» «fs» «fvLib»

linking: «ab» «alt» «altGrp» «anchor» «join» «joinGrp» «link» «linkGrp» «timeline»

*Declaration*

```
element epigraph { att.global.attributes, ( model.common | model.global )* }
```

```
Example <epigraph xml:lang="la" xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"
xmlns:ns302="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <cit>
    <bibl>Lucret.</bibl>
    <quote>
      <l part="F">petere inde coronam,</l>
      <l>Vnde prius nulli velarint tempora Musae.</l>
    </quote>
  </cit>
</epigraph>
```

**<expan>** (expansion) contains the expansion of an abbreviation.

*Module* core

*Used by* «model.pPart.editorial» «model.choicePart»

*May contain*

**analysis:** «S» «ana» «c» «m» «pc» «phr» «s» «span» «tok» «w»

**core:** «abbr» «add» «address» «binaryObject» «cb» «choice» «corr» «date» «del»  
 «distinct» «email» «emph» «expan» «foreign» «gap» «gloss» «graphic» «hi» «lb»  
 «measure» «measureGrp» «mentioned» «milestone» «name» «note» «num» «orig»  
 «pb» «ptr» «ref» «reg» «rs» «sic» «soCalled» «term» «time» «title» «unclear»

**figures:** «figure» «formula»

**iso-fs:** «fLib» «fs» «fvLib»

**linking:** «alt» «altGrp» «anchor» «join» «joinGrp» «link» «linkGrp» «seg» «timeline»

*Declaration*

```
element expan
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

```
Example The address is Southmoor <choice
xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"
xmlns:ns303="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <expan>Road</expan>
  <abbr>Rd</abbr>
</choice>
```

```
Example <expan xml:lang="la" xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"
xmlns:ns303="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <abbr>Imp</abbr>
  <ex>erator</ex>
</expan>
```

*Note* The content of this element should usually be a complete word or phrase. The <ex> element provided by the **transcr** module may be used to mark up sequences of letters supplied within such an expansion.

**<extent>** describes the approximate size of a text as stored on some carrier medium, whether digital or non-digital, specified in any convenient units.

*Module* header

*Used by* «biblFull» «fileDesc» «monogr»«model.biblPart»

*May contain*

analysis: «S» «ana» «c» «m» «pc» «phr» «s» «span» «tok» «w»

core: «abbr» «add» «address» «binaryObject» «cb» «choice» «corr» «date» «del»  
 «distinct» «email» «emph» «expan» «foreign» «gap» «gloss» «graphic» «hi» «lb»  
 «measure» «measureGrp» «mentioned» «milestone» «name» «note» «num» «orig»  
 «pb» «ptr» «ref» «reg» «rs» «sic» «soCalled» «term» «time» «title» «unclear»

figures: «figure» «formula»

iso-fs: «fLib» «fs» «fvLib»

linking: «alt» «altGrp» «anchor» «join» «joinGrp» «link» «linkGrp» «seg» «timeline»

*Declaration*

```
element extent { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```

*Example* `<extent xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns305="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">3200 sentences</extent>`  
`<extent>between 10 and 20 Mb</extent>`  
`<extent>ten 3.5 inch high density diskettes</extent>`

**<f>** (feature) represents a *feature value specification*, that is, the association of a name with a value of any of several different types.

*Module* iso-fs

*Used by* «fLib» «fs»

*May contain*

iso-fs: «fs» «numeric» «string» «symbol» «vAlt» «vColl» «vLabel»

*Declaration*

```
element f
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute name { xsd:Name },
  attribute fVal { xsd:anyURI }?,
  model.featureVal*
}
```

*Example* `<f name="gender" xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns306="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">`  
`<symbol value="feminine"/>`  
`</f>`

*Note* If the element is empty then a value must be supplied for the **fVal** attribute.

**<fDecl>** (feature declaration) declares a single feature, specifying its name, organization, range of allowed values, and optionally its default value.

*Module* iso-fs

*Used by* «fsDecl»

May contain

iso-fs: «fDescr» «vRange»

Declaration

```

element fDecl
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute name { xsd:Name },
  attribute optional { xsd:boolean }?,
  ( fDescr?, vRange )
}

```

*Example* `<fDecl name="INV" xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns308="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">  
 <fDescr>inverted sentence</fDescr>  
 <vRange>  
 <vAlt>  
 <binary value="true"/>  
 <binary value="false"/>  
 </vAlt>  
 </vRange>  
 <vDefault>  
 <binary value="false"/>  
 </vDefault>  
 </fDecl>`

**<fDescr>** (feature description (in FSD)) describes in prose what is represented by the feature being declared and its values.

Module iso-fs

Used by «fDecl»

May contain

core: «abbr» «address» «bibl» «biblStruct» «choice» «cit» «date» «desc» «distinct»  
 «email» «emph» «expan» «foreign» «gloss» «label» «list» «listBibl» «measure»  
 «measureGrp» «mentioned» «name» «num» «ptr» «q» «quote» «ref» «rs» «said»  
 «soCalled» «stage» «term» «time» «title»

figures: «table»

header: «biblFull»

Declaration

```

element fDescr { att.global.attributes, macro.limitedContent }

```

*Example* `<fDecl name="INV" xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns311="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">  
 <fDescr>inverted sentence</fDescr>  
 <vRange>  
 <vAlt>  
 <binary value="true"/>  
 <binary value="false"/>  
 </vAlt>  
 </vRange>  
 <vDefault>  
 <binary value="false"/>  
 </vDefault>`

```
</vDefault>  
</fDecl>
```

*Note* May contain character data, phrase-level elements, and inter-level elements.

---

**<fLib>** (feature library) assembles a library of feature elements.

*Module* iso-fs

*Used by* «model.global.meta»

*May contain*

iso-fs: «f»

*Declaration*

```
element fLib { att.global.attributes, f+ }
```

```
Example <fLib n="agreement features" xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"  
xmlns:ns312="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">  
  <f xml:id="pers1" name="person">  
    <symbol value="first"/>  
  </f>  
  <f xml:id="pers2" name="person">  
    <symbol value="second"/>  
  </f>  
  <!-- ... -->  
  <f xml:id="nums" name="number">  
    <symbol value="singular"/>  
  </f>  
  <f xml:id="nump" name="number">  
    <symbol value="plural"/>  
  </f>  
  <!-- ... -->  
</fLib>
```

*Note* The global **n** attribute may be used to supply an informal name to categorise the library's contents.

---

**<figDesc>** (description of figure) contains a brief prose description of the appearance or content of a graphic figure, for use when documenting an image without displaying it.

*Module* figures

*Used by* «figure»

*May contain*

core: «abbr» «address» «bibl» «biblStruct» «choice» «cit» «date» «desc» «distinct»  
«email» «emph» «expan» «foreign» «gloss» «label» «list» «listBibl» «measure»  
«measureGrp» «mentioned» «name» «num» «ptr» «q» «quote» «ref» «rs» «said»  
«soCalled» «stage» «term» «time» «title»

figures: «table»

header: «biblFull»

*Declaration*

```
element figDesc { att.global.attributes, macro.limitedContent }
```

---

*Example* `<figure xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns313="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">  
 <graphic url="emblem1.png"/>  
 <head>Emblemi d'Amore</head>  
 <figDesc>A pair of naked winged cupids, each holding a flaming torch, in a rural setting.</figDesc>  
</figure>`

*Note* This element is intended for use as an alternative to the content of its parent `<figure>` element; for example, to display when the image is required but the equipment in use cannot display graphic images. It may also be used for indexing or documentary purposes.

---

**<figure>** groups elements representing or containing graphic information such as an illustration or figure.

*Module* figures

*Used by* «model.global»

*May contain*

analysis: «span»

core: «binaryObject» «cb» «gap» «graphic» «head» «lb» «milestone» «note» «p» «pb»

figures: «figDesc» «figure» «formula»

iso-fs: «fLib» «fs» «fvLib»

linking: «ab» «alt» «altGrp» «anchor» «join» «joinGrp» «link» «linkGrp» «timeline»

*Declaration*

```

element figure
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.placement.attributes,
  (
    model.headLike      | model.pLike      | figDesc      | model.graphicLike      | mo
  )
}

```

*Example* `<figure xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns314="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">  
 <head>Figure One: The View from the Bridge</head>  
 <figDesc>A Whistleresque view showing four or five sailing boats in the foreground, and a series of buoys strung out between them.</figDesc>  
 <graphic url="http://www.example.org/fig1.png" scale="0.5"/>  
</figure>`

---

**<fileDesc>** (file description) contains a full bibliographic description of an electronic file.

*Module* header

*Used by* «teiHeader»

*May contain*

header: «editionStmt» «extent» «notesStmt» «publicationStmt» «seriesStmt»

«sourceDesc» «titleStmt»

*Declaration*

```

element fileDesc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  (
    (
      titleStmt,
      editionStmt?,
      extent?,
      publicationStmt,
      seriesStmt?,
      notesStmt?
    ),
    sourceDesc+
  )
}

```

*Example* `<fileDesc xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns316="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">`  
`<titleStmt>`  
`<title>The shortest possible TEI document</title>`  
`</titleStmt>`  
`<publicationStmt>`  
`<p>Distributed as part of TEI P5</p>`  
`</publicationStmt>`  
`<sourceDesc>`  
`<p>No print source exists: this is an original digital text</p>`  
`</sourceDesc>`  
`</fileDesc>`

*Note* The major source of information for those seeking to create a catalogue entry or bibliographic citation for an electronic file. As such, it provides a title and statements of responsibility together with details of the publication or distribution of the file, of any series to which it belongs, and detailed bibliographic notes for matters not addressed elsewhere in the header. It also contains a full bibliographic description for the source or sources from which the electronic text was derived.

**<foreign>** (foreign) identifies a word or phrase as belonging to some language other than that of the surrounding text.

*Module* core

*Used by* «model.emphLike»

*May contain*

**analysis:** «S» «ana» «c» «m» «pc» «phr» «s» «span» «tok» «w»

**core:** «abbr» «add» «address» «binaryObject» «cb» «choice» «corr» «date» «del»  
 «distinct» «email» «emph» «expan» «foreign» «gap» «gloss» «graphic» «hi» «lb»  
 «measure» «measureGrp» «mentioned» «milestone» «name» «note» «num» «orig»  
 «pb» «ptr» «ref» «reg» «rs» «sic» «soCalled» «term» «time» «title» «unclear»

**figures:** «figure» «formula»

**iso-fs:** «fLib» «fs» «fvLib»

**linking:** «alt» «altGrp» «anchor» «join» «joinGrp» «link» «linkGrp» «seg» «timeline»

*Declaration*



```
element foreign { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```

*Example* This is

```
heathen Greek to you still? Your <foreign xml:lang="la"
xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"
xmlns:ns317="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">lapis
philosophicus</foreign>?
```

*Note* The global **xml:lang** attribute should be supplied for this element to identify the language of the word or phrase marked. As elsewhere, its value should be a language tag as defined in «CHSH». This element is intended for use only where no other element is available to mark the phrase or words concerned. The global **xml:lang** attribute should be used in preference to this element where it is intended to mark the language of the whole of some text element. The <distinct> element may be used to identify phrases belonging to sublanguages or registers not generally regarded as true languages.

**<formula>** contains a mathematical or other formula.

*Module* figures

*Used by* «model.graphicLike»

*May contain*

core: «binaryObject» «graphic»

figures: «formula»

*Declaration*

```
element formula
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute notation { xsd:anyURI }?,
  ( text | model.graphicLike ) *
}
```

*Example* <formula notation="TeX" xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"
xmlns:ns318="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">\$e=mc^2\$</formula>

**<front>** (front matter) contains any prefatory matter (headers, title page, prefaces, dedications, etc.) found at the start of a document, before the main body.

*Module* textstructure

*Used by* «text»

*May contain*

analysis: «span»

core: «cb» «divGen» «gap» «head» «lb» «milestone» «note» «pb»

figures: «figure»

iso-fs: «fLib» «fs» «fvLib»

linking: «alt» «altGrp» «anchor» «join» «joinGrp» «link» «linkGrp» «timeline»

textstructure: «byline» «closer» «div» «docAuthor» «docDate» «docEdition»
«docImprint» «docTitle» «epigraph» «postscript» «signed» «titlePage» «titlePart»
«trailer»

*Declaration*

```

element front
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  (
    ( model.frontPart | model.pLike.front | model.global )*,
    (
      (
        ( model.div1Like ),
        ( model.frontPart | model.div1Like | model.global )*
      )
      | (
        ( model.divLike ),
        ( model.frontPart | model.divLike | model.global )*
      )
    )?
  ),
  ( ( ( model.divBottomPart ), ( model.divBottomPart | model.global )* )? )
}

```

*Example* `<front xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns320="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">`  
`<epigraph>`  
`<quote>Nam Sibyllam quidem Cumis ego ipse oculis meis`  
`vidi in ampulla pendere, et cum illi pueri dicerent:`  
`<q xml:lang="grc">Sibylla ti weleis</q>; respondebat`  
`illa: <q xml:lang="grc">apowanein welo.</q>`  
`</quote>`  
`</epigraph>`  
`<div type="dedication">`  
`<p>For Ezra Pound <q xml:lang="it">il miglior fabbro.</q>`  
`</p>`  
`</div>`  
`</front>`

*Example* `<front xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns320="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">`  
`<div type="dedication">`  
`<p>To our three selves</p>`  
`</div>`  
`<div type="preface">`  
`<head>Author's Note</head>`  
`<p>All the characters in this book are purely imaginary, and if the`  
`author has used names that may suggest a reference to living`  
`persons`  
`she has done so inadvertently.`  
`...</p>`  
`</div>`  
`</front>`

**<fs>** (feature structure) represents a *feature structure*, that is, a collection of feature-value pairs organized as a structural unit.

*Module* iso-fs

*Used by* «ana» «vColl»«model.featureVal.complex» «model.global.meta»

*May contain*

iso-fs: «f»

*Declaration*

```

element fs
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute type { xsd:Name }?,
  attribute feats { list { xsd:anyURI+ } }?,
  f*
}

```

*Example* `<fs type="agreement_structure" xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns322="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">`  
`<f name="person">`  
`<symbol value="third"/>`  
`</f>`  
`<f name="number">`  
`<symbol value="singular"/>`  
`</f>`  
`</fs>`

**<fsConstraints>** (feature-structure constraints) specifies constraints on the content of valid feature structures.

*Module* iso-fs

*Used by* «fsDecl»

*May contain* Empty element

*Declaration* `element fsConstraints { att.global.attributes }`

*Example* `<fsConstraints xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns324="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">`  
`<cond>`  
`<fs>`  
`<!-- ...-->`  
`</fs>`  
`<then/>`  
`<fs>`  
`<!-- ... -->`  
`</fs>`  
`</cond>`  
`<bicond>`  
`<!-- ... -->`  
`</bicond>`  
`<cond>`  
`<!-- ... -->`  
`</cond>`  
`</fsConstraints>`

*Note* May contain a series of conditional or biconditional elements.

**<fsDecl>** (feature structure declaration) declares one type of feature structure.

Module iso-fs

Used by `<fsDecl>`

May contain

iso-fs: `<fDecl>` `<fsConstraints>` `<fsDescr>`

Declaration

```

element fsDecl
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute type { xsd:Name },
  attribute baseTypes { list { xsd:Name+ } }?,
  ( fsDescr?, fDecl+, fsConstraints? )
}

```

```

Example <fsDecl type="SomeName" xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"
xmlns:ns325="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <fsDescr>Describes what this type of fs represents</fsDescr>
  <fDecl name="featureOne">
<!-- The declaration for featureOne -->
  </fDecl>
  <fDecl name="featureTwo">
<!-- The declaration for featureTwo -->
  </fDecl>
  <fsConstraints>
<!-- The feature structure constraints go here -->
  </fsConstraints>
</fsDecl>

```

**<fsDescr>** (feature system description (in FSD)) describes in prose what is represented by the type of feature structure declared in the enclosing `fsDecl`.

Module iso-fs

Used by `<fsDecl>`

May contain

core: `<abbr>` `<address>` `<bibl>` `<biblStruct>` `<choice>` `<cit>` `<date>` `<desc>` `<distinct>`  
`<email>` `<emph>` `<expan>` `<foreign>` `<gloss>` `<label>` `<list>` `<listBibl>` `<measure>`  
`<measureGrp>` `<mentioned>` `<name>` `<num>` `<ptr>` `<q>` `<quote>` `<ref>` `<rs>` `<said>`  
`<soCalled>` `<stage>` `<term>` `<time>` `<title>`

figures: `<table>`

header: `<biblFull>`

Declaration

```

element fsDescr { att.global.attributes, macro.limitedContent }

```

```

Example <fsDecl type="Agreement" xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"
xmlns:ns329="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <fsDescr>This type of feature structure encodes the features
  for subject-verb agreement in English</fsDescr>
  <fDecl name="PERS">
  <fsDescr>person (first, second, or third)</fsDescr>
<!-- ... -->
  </fDecl>
  <fDecl name="NUM">

```

```

    <fDescr>number (singular or plural)</fDescr>
  <!-- ...-->
</fDecl>
</fsDecl>

```

*Note* May contain character data, phrase-level elements, and inter-level elements.

**<fsdDecl>** (feature system declaration) provides a feature system declaration comprising one or more feature structure declarations or feature structure declaration links.

*Module* iso-fs

*Used by* «model.encodingDescPart» «model.resourceLike»

*May contain*

iso-fs: «fsDecl»

*Declaration*

```

element fsdDecl { att.global.attributes, fsDecl+ }

```

*Example*

```

<fsdDecl xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"
xmlns:ns330="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <fsDecl type="GPSG">
<!-- ... -->
  </fsDecl>
  <fsDecl type="lex" xml:id="LX123">
<!-- ... -->
  </fsDecl>
  <fsdLink type="entry" target="#LX123"/>
  <fsdLink
    type="subentry"
    target="http://www.example.com/fsdLib.xml#LX123"/>
</fsdDecl>

```

**<funder>** (funding body) specifies the name of an individual, institution, or organization responsible for the funding of a project or text.

*Module* header

*Used by* «model.respLike»

*May contain*

analysis: «span»

core: «abbr» «address» «cb» «choice» «date» «distinct» «email» «emph» «expan»  
 «foreign» «gap» «gloss» «lb» «measure» «measureGrp» «mentioned» «milestone»  
 «name» «note» «num» «pb» «ptr» «ref» «rs» «soCalled» «term» «time» «title»

figures: «figure»

iso-fs: «fLib» «fs» «fvLib»

linking: «alt» «altGrp» «anchor» «join» «joinGrp» «link» «linkGrp» «timeline»

*Declaration*

```

element funder { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq.limited }

```

*Example*

```

<funder xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"
xmlns:ns331="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">The National Endowment for the

```

```
Humanities, an independent federal agency</funder>
<funder>Directorate General XIII of the Commission of the European
Communities</funder>
<funder>The Andrew W. Mellon Foundation</funder>
<funder>The Social Sciences and Humanities Research Council of
Canada</funder>
```

*Note* Funders provide financial support for a project; they are distinct from *sponsors*, who provide intellectual support and authority.

**<fvLib>** (feature-value library) assembles a library of reusable feature value elements (including complete feature structures).

*Module* iso-fs

*Used by* «model.global.meta»

*May contain*

iso-fs: «fs» «numeric» «string» «symbol» «vAlt» «vColl» «vLabel»

*Declaration*

```
element fvLib { att.global.attributes, model.featureVal* }
```

*Example*

```
<fvLib n="symbolic values" xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"
xmlns:ns332="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <symbol xml:id="sfirst" value="first"/>
  <symbol xml:id="ssecond" value="second"/>
  <!-- ... -->
  <symbol xml:id="ssing" value="singular"/>
  <symbol xml:id="splur" value="plural"/>
  <!-- ... -->
</fvLib>
```

*Note* A feature value library may include any number of values of any kind, including multiple occurrences of identical values such as `<binary value="true"/>` or default. The only thing guaranteed unique in a feature value library is the set of labels used to identify the values.

**<gap>** (gap) indicates a point where material has been omitted in a transcription, whether for editorial reasons described in the TEI header, as part of sampling practice, or because the material is illegible, invisible, or inaudible.

*Module* core

*Used by* «model.global.edit»

*May contain*

core: «desc» «gloss»

*Declaration*

```
element gap
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  attribute reason
  {
    list { token { pattern = "(\p{L}|\p{N}|\p{P}|\p{S})+" }+ }
```

```

    }?,
    attribute hand { xsd:anyURI }?,
    attribute agent { xsd:Name }?,
    model.glossLike*
  }

```

*Example* `<gap extent="4" unit="chars" reason="illegible" xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns333="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0"/>`

*Example* `<gap extent="1" unit="essay" reason="sampling" xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns333="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0"/>`

*Note* The `<gap>`, `<unclear>`, and `<del>` core tag elements may be closely allied in use with the `<damage>` and `<supplied>` elements, available when using the additional tagset for transcription of primary sources. See section «PHCOMB» for discussion of which element is appropriate for which circumstance.

**<geoDecl>** (geographic coordinates declaration) documents the notation and the datum used for geographic coordinates expressed as content of the `<geo>` element elsewhere within the document.

*Module header*

*Used by* «model.encodingDescPart»

*May contain*

**analysis:** «S» «ana» «c» «m» «pc» «phr» «s» «span» «tok» «w»

**core:** «abbr» «add» «address» «binaryObject» «cb» «choice» «corr» «date» «del» «distinct» «email» «emph» «expan» «foreign» «gap» «gloss» «graphic» «hi» «lb» «measure» «measureGrp» «mentioned» «milestone» «name» «note» «num» «orig» «pb» «ptr» «ref» «reg» «rs» «sic» «soCalled» «term» «time» «title» «unclear»

**figures:** «figure» «formula»

**iso-fs:** «fLib» «fs» «fvLib»

**linking:** «alt» «altGrp» «anchor» «join» «joinGrp» «link» «linkGrp» «seg» «timeline»

*Declaration*

```

element geoDecl
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  attribute datum { "WGS84" | "MGRS" | "OSGB36" | "ED50" | xsd:Name }?,
  macro.phraseSeq
}

```

*Example* `<geoDecl datum="OSGB36" xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns340="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0"/>`

**<gloss>** identifies a phrase or word used to provide a gloss or definition for some other word or phrase.

*Module core*

*Used by* «model.emphLike» «model.glossLike»

May contain

analysis: «S» «ana» «c» «m» «pc» «phr» «s» «span» «tok» «w»  
 core: «abbr» «add» «address» «binaryObject» «cb» «choice» «corr» «date» «del»  
 «distinct» «email» «emph» «expan» «foreign» «gap» «gloss» «graphic» «hi» «lb»  
 «measure» «measureGrp» «mentioned» «milestone» «name» «note» «num» «orig»  
 «pb» «ptr» «ref» «reg» «rs» «sic» «soCalled» «term» «time» «title» «unclear»  
 figures: «figure» «formula»  
 iso-fs: «fLib» «fs» «fvLib»  
 linking: «alt» «altGrp» «anchor» «join» «joinGrp» «link» «linkGrp» «seg» «timeline»

Declaration

```

element gloss
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  att.translatable.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  ( attribute target { xsd:anyURI }? | attribute cRef { xsd:anyURI }? ),
  macro.phraseSeq
}

```

*Example* We may define `<term xml:id="tdpv" rend="sc" xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns343="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">discoursal point of view</term>` as  
`<gloss target="#tdpv">the relationship, expressed through discourse structure, between the implied author or some other addresser, and the fiction.</gloss>`

*Note* The **target** and **cRef** attributes are mutually exclusive.

**<graphic/>** indicates the location of an inline graphic, illustration, or figure.

Module core

Used by «model.graphicLike» «model.titlepagePart»

May contain Empty element

Declaration

```

element graphic
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.internetMedia.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  attribute width
  {
    token
    {
      pattern = "[\-+]?d+(\.\d+)?(%|cm|mm|in|pt|pc|px|em|ex|gd|rem|vw|vh|vm)"
    }
  }?,
  attribute height
  {
    token
    {

```



```

        pattern = "[\-+]?[d+(\.[d+]?(%|cm|mm|in|pt|pc|px|em|ex|gd|rem|vw|vh|vm))"?
    }
    }?,
    attribute scale
    {
        xsd:double | token { pattern = "(\-?[d]+/\-?[d]+)" } | xsd:decimal
    }?,
    attribute url { xsd:anyURI }?,
    empty
}

```

*Example* `<figure xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns346="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">`  
`<graphic url="fig1.png"/>`  
`<head>Figure One: The View from the Bridge</head>`  
`<figDesc>A Whistleresque view showing four or five sailing boats in the foreground, and a series of buoys strung out between them.</figDesc>`  
`</figure>`

*Note* The **mimeType** attribute should be used to supply the MIME media type of the image specified by the **url** attribute.

**<group>** contains the body of a composite text, grouping together a sequence of distinct texts (or groups of such texts) which are regarded as a unit for some purpose, for example the collected works of an author, a sequence of prose essays, etc.

*Module* textstructure

*Used by* «group» «text»

*May contain*

analysis: «span»

core: «cb» «gap» «head» «lb» «meeting» «milestone» «note» «pb»

figures: «figure»

iso-fs: «fLib» «fs» «fvLib»

linking: «alt» «altGrp» «anchor» «join» «joinGrp» «link» «linkGrp» «timeline»

textstructure: «byline» «closer» «dateline» «docAuthor» «docDate» «epigraph»  
 «group» «opener» «postscript» «salute» «signed» «text» «trailer»

*Declaration*

```

element group
{
    att.global.attributes,
    att.declaring.attributes,
    (
        ( model.divTop | model.global )*,
        ( ( text | group ), ( text | group | model.global )* ),
        model.divBottom*
    )
}

```

*Example* `<text xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns349="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">`  
`<!-- Section on Alexander Pope starts -->`

```

<front>
<!-- biographical notice by editor -->
</front>
<group>
  <text>
<!-- first poem -->
  </text>
  <text>
<!-- second poem -->
  </text>
</group>
</text>
<!-- end of Pope section-->

```

**<head>** (heading) contains any type of heading, for example the title of a section, or the heading of a list, glossary, manuscript description, etc.

Module core

Used by «model.headLike» «model.pLike.front»

May contain

analysis: «S» «ana» «c» «m» «pc» «phr» «s» «span» «tok» «w»

core: «abbr» «add» «address» «bibl» «biblStruct» «binaryObject» «cb» «choice» «cit» «corr» «date» «del» «desc» «distinct» «email» «emph» «expan» «foreign» «gap» «gloss» «graphic» «hi» «label» «lb» «list» «listBibl» «measure» «measureGrp» «mentioned» «milestone» «name» «note» «num» «orig» «pb» «ptr» «q» «quote» «ref» «reg» «rs» «said» «sic» «soCalled» «stage» «term» «time» «title» «unclear»

figures: «figure» «formula» «table»

header: «biblFull»

iso-fs: «fLib» «fs» «fvLib»

linking: «alt» «altGrp» «anchor» «join» «joinGrp» «link» «linkGrp» «seg» «timeline»

Declaration

```

element head { att.global.attributes, att.typed.attributes, macro paraContent }

```

*Example* The most common use for the <head> element is to mark the headings of sections. In older writings, the headings or *incipits* may be rather longer than usual in modern works. If a section has an explicit ending as well as a heading, it should be marked as a <trailer>, as in this example:

```

<div1 n="I" type="book" xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"
xmlns:ns351="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <head>In the name of Christ here begins the first book of the
ecclesiastical history of
    Georgius Florentinus, known as Gregory, Bishop of Tours.</head>
  <list>
    <head>Chapter-Headings</head>
  </list>
  <div2 type="section">
    <head>In the name of Christ here begins Book I of the history.</head>
    <p>Proposing as I do ...</p>
    <p>From the Passion of our Lord until the death of Saint Martin four
hundred and twelve
      years passed.</p>
    <trailer>Here ends the first Book, which covers five thousand, five

```

```

hundred and ninety-six
    years from the beginning of the world down to the death of Saint
Martin.</trailer>
</div2>
</div1>

```

*Example* The <head> element is also used to mark headings of other units, such as lists:

```

With a few exceptions, connectives are equally
useful in all kinds of discourse: description, narration, exposition,
argument. <list type="simple" xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"
xmlns:ns351="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <head>Connectives</head>
  <item>above</item>
  <item>accordingly</item>
  <item>across from</item>
  <item>adjacent to</item>
  <item>again</item>
  <item>
<!-- ... -->
  </item>
</list>

```

*Note* The <head> element is used for headings at all levels; software which treats (e.g.) chapter headings, section headings, and list titles differently must determine the proper processing of a <head> element based on its structural position. A <head> occurring as the first element of a list is the title of that list; one occurring as the first element of a <div1> is the title of that chapter or section.

---

**<headItem>** (heading for list items) contains the heading for the item or gloss column in a glossary list or similar structured list.

*Module* core

*Used by* «list»

*May contain*

**analysis:** «S» «ana» «c» «m» «pc» «phr» «s» «span» «tok» «w»

**core:** «abbr» «add» «address» «binaryObject» «cb» «choice» «corr» «date» «del»  
 «distinct» «email» «emph» «expan» «foreign» «gap» «gloss» «graphic» «hi» «lb»  
 «measure» «measureGrp» «mentioned» «milestone» «name» «note» «num» «orig»  
 «pb» «ptr» «ref» «reg» «rs» «sic» «soCalled» «term» «time» «title» «unclear»

**figures:** «figure» «formula»

**iso-fs:** «fLib» «fs» «fvLib»

**linking:** «alt» «altGrp» «anchor» «join» «joinGrp» «link» «linkGrp» «seg» «timeline»

*Declaration*

```

element headItem { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }

```

*Example* The simple, straightforward statement of an idea is preferable to the use of a worn-out expression.

```

<list type="gloss" xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"
xmlns:ns353="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <headLabel rend="small caps">TRITE</headLabel>
  <headItem rend="small caps">SIMPLE, STRAIGHTFORWARD</headItem>
  <label>bury the hatchet</label>

```

```

<item>stop fighting, make peace</item>
<label>at loose ends</label>
<item>disorganized</item>
<label>on speaking terms</label>
<item>friendly</item>
<label>fair and square</label>
<item>completely honest</item>
<label>at death's door</label>
<item>near death</item>
</list>

```

*Note* The <headItem> element may appear only if each item in the list is preceded by a <label>.

**<headLabel>** (heading for list labels) contains the heading for the label or term column in a glossary list or similar structured list.

*Module core*

*Used by* <list>

*May contain*

**analysis:** «S» «ana» «c» «m» «pc» «phr» «s» «span» «tok» «w»

**core:** «abbr» «add» «address» «binaryObject» «cb» «choice» «corr» «date» «del»  
 «distinct» «email» «emph» «expan» «foreign» «gap» «gloss» «graphic» «hi» «lb»  
 «measure» «measureGrp» «mentioned» «milestone» «name» «note» «num» «orig»  
 «pb» «ptr» «ref» «reg» «rs» «sic» «soCalled» «term» «time» «title» «unclear»

**figures:** «figure» «formula»

**iso-fs:** «fLib» «fs» «fvLib»

**linking:** «alt» «altGrp» «anchor» «join» «joinGrp» «link» «linkGrp» «seg» «timeline»

*Declaration*

```

element headLabel { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }

```

*Example* The simple, straightforward statement of an idea is preferable to the use of a worn-out expression.

```

<list type="gloss" xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"
xmlns:ns354="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <headLabel rend="small caps">TRITE</headLabel>
  <headItem rend="small caps">SIMPLE, STRAIGHTFORWARD</headItem>
  <label>bury the hatchet</label>
  <item>stop fighting, make peace</item>
  <label>at loose ends</label>
  <item>disorganized</item>
  <label>on speaking terms</label>
  <item>friendly</item>
  <label>fair and square</label>
  <item>completely honest</item>
  <label>at death's door</label>
  <item>near death</item>
</list>

```

*Note* The <headLabel> element may appear only if each item in the list is preceded by a <label>.

**<hi>** (highlighted) marks a word or phrase as graphically distinct from the surrounding text, for reasons concerning which no claim is made.

*Module core*

*Used by* «model.hiLike»

*May contain*

**analysis:** «S» «ana» «c» «m» «pc» «phr» «s» «span» «tok» «w»  
**core:** «abbr» «add» «address» «bibl» «biblStruct» «binaryObject» «cb» «choice» «cit»  
 «corr» «date» «del» «desc» «distinct» «email» «emph» «expan» «foreign» «gap»  
 «gloss» «graphic» «hi» «label» «lb» «list» «listBibl» «measure» «measureGrp»  
 «mentioned» «milestone» «name» «note» «num» «orig» «pb» «ptr» «q» «quote»  
 «ref» «reg» «rs» «said» «sic» «soCalled» «stage» «term» «time» «title» «unclear»  
**figures:** «figure» «formula» «table»  
**header:** «biblFull»  
**iso-fs:** «fLib» «fs» «fvLib»  
**linking:** «alt» «altGrp» «anchor» «join» «joinGrp» «link» «linkGrp» «seg» «timeline»

*Declaration*

```
element hi { att.global.attributes, macro.paraContent }
```

*Example* `<hi rend="gothic" xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns355="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">And this Indenture further witnesseth</hi>  
that the said <hi rend="italic">Walter Shandy</hi>, merchant,  
in consideration of the said intended marriage ...`

**<hyphenation>** summarizes the way in which hyphenation in a source text has been treated in an encoded version of it.

*Module header*

*Used by* «model.editorialDeclPart»

*May contain*

**core:** «p»  
**linking:** «ab»

*Declaration*

```
element hyphenation
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  attribute eol { "all" | "some" | "hard" | "none" }?,
  model.pLike+
}
```

*Example* `<hyphenation eol="some" xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns356="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">  
<p>End-of-line hyphenation silently removed where appropriate</p>  
</hyphenation>`

**<idno>** (identifying number) supplies any number or other identifier used to identify a bibliographic item in a standardized way.

*Module header*

## 5 ELEMENTS

---

Used by «biblStruct» «monogr» «seriesStmnt» «model.biblPart» «model.publicationStmntPart»

May contain Character data only

Declaration

```
element idno { att.global.attributes, attribute type { xsd:Name }?, text }
```

```
Example <idno type="ISSN" xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"
xmlns:ns359="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">0143-3385</idno>
<idno type="DOI">doi:10.1000/123</idno>
<idno type="URL">http://authority.nzetc.org/463</idno>
<idno type="LT">Thomason Tract E.537(17)</idno>
<idno type="Wing">C695</idno>
```

---

**<imprint>** groups information relating to the publication or distribution of a bibliographic item.

Module core

Used by «monogr»

May contain

analysis: «span»

core: «biblScope» «cb» «date» «gap» «lb» «milestone» «note» «pb» «pubPlace»  
«publisher» «time»

figures: «figure»

header: «distributor»

iso-fs: «fLib» «fs» «fvLib»

linking: «alt» «altGrp» «anchor» «join» «joinGrp» «link» «linkGrp» «timeline»

Declaration

```
element imprint
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( ( ( model.imprintPart ) | ( model.dateLike ) ), model.global* )+
}
```

```
Example <imprint xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"
xmlns:ns361="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
<pubPlace>Oxford</pubPlace>
<publisher>Clarendon Press</publisher>
<date>1987</date>
</imprint>
```

---

**<interpretation>** describes the scope of any analytic or interpretive information added to the text in addition to the transcription.

Module header

Used by «model.editorialDeclPart»

May contain

core: «p»

linking: «ab»

Declaration

```

element interpretation
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  model.pLike+
}

```

```

Example <interpretation xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"
xmlns:ns362="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <p>The part of speech analysis applied throughout section 4 was added by
hand and has not
  been checked</p>
</interpretation>

```

**<item>** contains one component of a list.

*Module* core

*Used by* «list»

*May contain*

**analysis:** «S» «ana» «c» «m» «pc» «phr» «s» «span» «tok» «w»

**core:** «abbr» «add» «address» «bibl» «biblStruct» «binaryObject» «cb» «choice» «cit»  
«corr» «date» «del» «desc» «distinct» «email» «emph» «expan» «foreign» «gap»  
«gloss» «graphic» «hi» «l» «label» «lb» «lg» «list» «listBibl» «measure»  
«measureGrp» «mentioned» «milestone» «name» «note» «num» «orig» «p» «pb»  
«ptr» «q» «quote» «ref» «reg» «rs» «said» «sic» «soCalled» «sp» «stage» «term»  
«time» «title» «unclear»

**figures:** «figure» «formula» «table»

**header:** «biblFull»

**iso-fs:** «fLib» «fs» «fvLib»

**linking:** «ab» «alt» «altGrp» «anchor» «join» «joinGrp» «link» «linkGrp» «seg»  
«timeline»

*Declaration*

```

element item { att.global.attributes, macro.specialPara }

```

```

Example <list type="ordered" xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"
xmlns:ns364="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <head>Here begin the chapter headings of Book IV</head>
  <item n="4.1">The death of Queen Clotild.</item>
  <item n="4.2">How King Lothar wanted to appropriate one third of the
Church revenues.</item>
  <item n="4.3">The wives and children of Lothar.</item>
  <item n="4.4">The Counts of the Bretons.</item>
  <item n="4.5">Saint Gall the Bishop.</item>
  <item n="4.6">The priest Cato.</item>
  <item> ...</item>
</list>

```

*Note* May contain simple prose or a sequence of chunks. Whatever string of characters is used to label a list item in the copy text may be used as the value of the global **n** attribute, but it is not required that numbering be recorded explicitly. In ordered lists, the **n** attribute on the **<item>** element is by definition synonymous with the use of the **<label>** element to record the

enumerator of the list item. In glossary lists, however, the term being defined should be given with the <label> element, not **n**.

**<join>** identifies a possibly fragmented segment of text, by pointing at the possibly discontinuous elements which compose it.

*Module linking*

*Used by* «joinGrp» «model.global.meta»

*May contain*

**core:** «desc» «gloss»

*Declaration*

```

element join
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.pointing.attributes,
  attribute targets { list { xsd:anyURI, xsd:anyURI+ } },
  attribute result { xsd:Name }?,
  attribute scope { "root" | "branches" }?,
  model.glossLike*
}

```

*Example* The following example is discussed in section «SAAG»:

```

<sp xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"
xmlns:ns365="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <speaker>Hughie</speaker>
  <p>How does it go? <q>
    <l xml:id="frog_x1">da-da-da</l>
    <l xml:id="frog_l2">gets a new frog</l>
    <l>...</l>
  </q>
</p>
</sp>
<sp>
  <speaker>Louie</speaker>
  <p>
    <q>
      <l xml:id="frog_l1">When the old pond</l>
      <l>...</l>
    </q>
  </p>
</sp>
<sp>
  <speaker>Dewey</speaker>
  <p>
    <q>... <l xml:id="frog_l3">It's a new pond.</l>
  </q>
  </p>
  <join targets="#frog_l1 #frog_l2 #frog_l3" result="lg" scope="root"/>
</sp>

```

The <join> element here identifies a linegroup (<lg>) comprising the three lines indicated by the **targets** attribute. The value **root** for the **scope** attribute indicates that the resulting virtual element contains the three <l> elements linked to at #frog\_l1 #frog\_l2 #frog\_l3, rather than their character data content.



*Example* In this example, the attribute **scope** is specified with the value of **branches** to indicate that the virtual list being constructed is to be made by taking the lists indicated by the **targets** attribute of the `<join>` element, discarding the `<list>` tags which enclose them, and combining the items contained within the lists into a single virtual list:

```
<p xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"
xmlns:ns365="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">Southern dialect (my own variety,
at least) has only <list xml:id="LP1">
  <item>
    <s>I done gone</s>
  </item>
  <item>
    <s>I done went</s>
  </item>
</list> whereas Negro Non-Standard basilect has both these and
<list xml:id="LP2">
  <item>
    <s>I done go</s>
  </item>
</list>.</p>
<p>White Southern dialect also has <list xml:id="LP3">
  <item>
    <s>I've done gone</s>
  </item>
  <item>
    <s>I've done went</s>
  </item>
</list> which, when they occur in Negro dialect, should probably be
considered as borrowings from other varieties of English.</p>
<join
  result="list"
  xml:id="LST1"
  targets="#LP1 #LP2 #LP3"
  scope="branches">
  <desc>Sample sentences in Southern speech</desc>
</join>
```

**<joinGrp>** (join group) groups a collection of join elements and possibly pointers.

*Module linking*

*Used by* «model.global.meta»

*May contain*

core: «desc» «gloss» «ptr»

linking: «join»

*Declaration*

```
element joinGrp
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.pointing.group.attributes,
  attribute result { xsd:Name }?,
  ( model.glossLike*, ( join | ptr )+ )
}
```

```

Example <joinGrp domains="zuitxt zuitxt zuitxt" result="q"
xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"
xmlns:ns368="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <join targets="#zuiq1 #zuiq2 #zuiq6"/>
  <join targets="#zuiq3 #zuiq4 #zuiq5"/>
</joinGrp>

```

*Note* Any number of <join> or <ptr> elements.

**<keywords>** contains a list of keywords or phrases identifying the topic or nature of a text.

*Module* header

*Used by* «textClass»

*May contain*

core: «list» «term»

*Declaration*

```

element keywords
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute scheme { xsd:anyURI },
  ( term+ | list )
}

```

```

Example <keywords scheme="http://classificationweb.net"
xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"
xmlns:ns371="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <list>
    <item>Babbage, Charles</item>
    <item>Mathematicians - Great Britain - Biography</item>
  </list>
</keywords>

```

**<l>** (verse line) contains a single, possibly incomplete, line of verse.

*Module* core

*Used by* «model.lLike»

*May contain*

analysis: «S» «ana» «c» «m» «pc» «phr» «s» «span» «tok» «w»

core: «abbr» «add» «address» «bibl» «biblStruct» «binaryObject» «cb» «choice» «cit»  
 «corr» «date» «del» «desc» «distinct» «email» «emph» «expan» «foreign» «gap»  
 «gloss» «graphic» «hi» «label» «lb» «list» «listBibl» «measure» «measureGrp»  
 «mentioned» «milestone» «name» «note» «num» «orig» «pb» «ptr» «q» «quote»  
 «ref» «reg» «rs» «said» «sic» «soCalled» «stage» «term» «time» «title» «unclear»

figures: «figure» «formula» «table»

header: «biblFull»

iso-fs: «fLib» «fs» «fvLib»

linking: «alt» «altGrp» «anchor» «join» «joinGrp» «link» «linkGrp» «seg» «timeline»

*Declaration*

```

element l
{

```

```
att.global.attributes,
attribute part { "Y" | "N" | "I" | "M" | "F" }?,
macro.paraContent }
```

*Example* `<l met="-/-/-/-/" part="Y" xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"
xmlns:ns373="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0"/>`

**<label>** contains the label associated with an item in a list; in glossaries, marks the term being defined.

*Module core*

*Used by* «list»«model.labelLike»

*May contain*

**analysis:** «S» «ana» «c» «m» «pc» «phr» «s» «span» «tok» «w»  
**core:** «abbr» «add» «address» «binaryObject» «cb» «choice» «corr» «date» «del»  
«distinct» «email» «emph» «expan» «foreign» «gap» «gloss» «graphic» «hi» «lb»  
«measure» «measureGrp» «mentioned» «milestone» «name» «note» «num» «orig»  
«pb» «ptr» «ref» «reg» «rs» «sic» «soCalled» «term» «time» «title» «unclear»  
**figures:** «figure» «formula»  
**iso-fs:** «fLib» «fs» «fvLib»  
**linking:** «alt» «altGrp» «anchor» «join» «joinGrp» «link» «linkGrp» «seg» «timeline»

*Declaration*

```
element label { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```

*Example* Labels are most commonly used for the headwords in glossary lists; note the use of the global **xml:lang** attribute to set the default language of the glossary list to Middle English, and identify the glosses and headings as modern English or Latin:

```
<list type="gloss" xml:lang="enm" xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"
xmlns:ns375="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <head xml:lang="en">Vocabulary</head>
  <headLabel xml:lang="en">Middle English</headLabel>
  <headItem xml:lang="en">New English</headItem>
  <label>nu</label>
  <item xml:lang="en">now</item>
  <label>lhude</label>
  <item xml:lang="en">loudly</item>
  <label>bloweth</label>
  <item xml:lang="en">blooms</item>
  <label>med</label>
  <item xml:lang="en">meadow</item>
  <label>wude</label>
  <item xml:lang="en">wood</item>
  <label>awe</label>
  <item xml:lang="en">ewe</item>
  <label>lhouth</label>
  <item xml:lang="en">lows</item>
  <label>sterteth</label>
  <item xml:lang="en">bounds, frisks (cf. <cit>
    <ref>Chaucer, K.T.644</ref>
    <quote>a courser, <term>sterting</term>as the fyr</quote>
  </cit>
</item>
```

```

<label>verteth</label>
<item xml:lang="la">pedit</item>
<label>murie</label>
<item xml:lang="en">merrily</item>
<label>swik</label>
<item xml:lang="en">cease</item>
<label>naver</label>
<item xml:lang="en">never</item>
</list>

```

*Example* Labels may also be used to record explicitly the numbers or letters which mark list items in ordered lists, as in this extract from Gibbon's *Autobiography*. In this usage the `<label>` element is synonymous with the `n` attribute on the `<item>` element:

```

I will add two facts, which have seldom occurred
in the composition of six, or at least of five quartos.
<list rend="runon" type="ordered" xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"
xmlns:ns375="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <label>(1)</label>
  <item>My first rough manuscript, without any intermediate copy, has been
sent to the press.</item>
  <label>(2) </label>
  <item>Not a sheet has been seen by any human eyes, excepting those of the
author and the
  printer: the faults and the merits are exclusively my own.</item>
</list>

```

*Example* Labels may also be used for other structured list items, as in this extract from the journal of Edward Gibbon:

```

<list type="gloss" xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"
xmlns:ns375="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <label>March 1757.</label>
  <item>I wrote some critical observations upon Plautus.</item>
  <label>March 8th.</label>
  <item>I wrote a long dissertation upon some lines of Virgil.</item>
  <label>June.</label>
  <item>I saw Mademoiselle Curchod -- <quote xml:lang="la">Omnia vincit
amor, et nos cedamus
  amori.</quote>
  </item>
  <label>August.</label>
  <item>I went to Crassy, and staid two days.</item>
</list>

```

**<langUsage>** (language usage) describes the languages, sublanguages, registers, dialects, etc. represented within a text.

*Module header*

*Used by* «model.profileDescPart»

*May contain*

header: «language»

*Declaration*

```

element langUsage
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,

```

```

language+
}

```

*Example* `<langUsage xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns376="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">`  
`<language ident="fr-CA" usage="60">Québécois</language>`  
`<language ident="en-CA" usage="20">Canadian business English</language>`  
`<language ident="en-GB" usage="20">British English</language>`  
`</langUsage>`

**<language>** characterizes a single language or sublanguage used within a text.

*Module header*

*Used by* «langUsage»

*May contain*

analysis: «span»

core: «abbr» «address» «cb» «choice» «date» «distinct» «email» «emph» «expan»  
 «foreign» «gap» «gloss» «lb» «measure» «measureGrp» «mentioned» «milestone»  
 «name» «note» «num» «pb» «ptr» «ref» «rs» «soCalled» «term» «time» «title»

figures: «figure»

iso-fs: «fLib» «fs» «fvLib»

linking: «alt» «altGrp» «anchor» «join» «joinGrp» «link» «linkGrp» «timeline»

*Declaration*

```

element language
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute ident { xsd:language },
  attribute usage { xsd:nonNegativeInteger { maxInclusive = "100" } }?,
  macro.phraseSeq.limited}

```

*Example* `<langUsage xml:lang="en-US" xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns378="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">`  
`<language ident="en-US" usage="75">modern American English</language>`  
`<language ident="i-az-Arab" usage="20">Azerbaijani in Arabic`  
`script</language>`  
`<language ident="x-lap" usage="05">Pig Latin</language>`  
`</langUsage>`

*Note* Particularly for sublanguages, an informal prose characterization should be supplied as content for the element.

**<lb/>** (line break) marks the start of a new (typographic) line in some edition or version of a text.

*Module core*

*Used by* «model.milestoneLike»

*May contain* Empty element

*Declaration*

```

element lb
{
  att.global.attributes,

```

```

    att.typed.attributes,
    att.sourced.attributes,
    empty
}

```

*Example* This example shows typographical line breaks within metrical lines, where they occur at different places in different editions:

```

<l xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"
xmlns:ns381="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">Of Mans First
Disobedience,<lb ed="1674"/> and<lb ed="1667"/> the Fruit</l>
<l>Of that Forbidden Tree, whose<lb ed="1667 1674"/> mortal tast</l>
<l>Brought Death into the World,<lb ed="1667"/> and all<lb ed="1674"/> our
woe,</l>

```

*Note* By convention, `<lb>` elements should appear at the point in the text where a new line starts. The `n` attribute, if used, indicates the number or other value associated with the text between this point and the next `<lb>` element, typically the sequence number of the line within the page, or other appropriate unit. This element is intended to be used for marking actual line breaks on a manuscript or printed page, at the point where they occur; it should not be used to tag structural units such as lines of verse (for which the `<l>` element is available) except in circumstances where structural units cannot otherwise be marked. The `type` attribute may be used to characterize the line break in any respect, but its most common use is to specify that the presence of the line break does not imply the end of the word in which it is embedded. A value such as **inWord** or **nobreak** is recommended for this purpose, but encoders are free to choose whichever values are appropriate.

**<lg>** (line group) contains a group of verse lines functioning as a formal unit, e.g. a stanza, refrain, verse paragraph, etc.

*Module* core

*Used by* `<lg>` `<sp>``<model.divPart>`

*May contain*

**analysis:** `<span>`

**core:** `<cb>` `<gap>` `<head>` `<l>` `<lb>` `<lg>` `<meeting>` `<milestone>` `<note>` `<pb>`

**figures:** `<figure>`

**iso-fs:** `<fLib>` `<fs>` `<fvLib>`

**linking:** `<alt>` `<altGrp>` `<anchor>` `<join>` `<joinGrp>` `<link>` `<linkGrp>` `<timeline>`

**textstructure:** `<byline>` `<closer>` `<dateline>` `<docAuthor>` `<docDate>` `<epigraph>`  
`<opener>` `<postscript>` `<salute>` `<signed>` `<trailer>`

*Declaration*

```

element lg
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.divLike.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  (
    ( model.divTop | model.global )*,
    ( model.lLike | lg ),
    ( model.lLike | lg | model.global )*,
    ( ( model.divBottom ), model.global* )*
  )
}

```

```

)
}

```

*Example* `<lg type="free" xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns383="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">`  
`<l>Let me be my own fool</l>`  
`<l>of my own making, the sum of it</l>`  
`</lg>`  
`<lg type="free">`  
`<l>is equivocal.</l>`  
`<l>One says of the drunken farmer:</l>`  
`</lg>`  
`<lg type="free">`  
`<l>leave him lay off it. And this is</l>`  
`<l>the explanation.</l>`  
`</lg>`

*Note* contains verse lines or nested line groups only, possibly prefixed by a heading.

**<link/>** defines an association or hypertextual link among elements or passages, of some type not more precisely specifiable by other elements.

*Module* linking

*Used by* «linkGrp» «model.global.meta»

*May contain* Empty element

*Declaration*

```

element link
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.pointing.attributes,
  attribute targets { list { xsd:anyURI, xsd:anyURI+ } },
  empty
}

```

*Example* `<s n="1" xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns385="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">`The state Supreme Court has refused to release `<rs xml:id="R1">`  
`<rs xml:id="R2">`Rahway State Prison`</rs>` inmate`</rs>`  
`<rs xml:id="R3">`James Scott`</rs>` on bail.`</s>`  
`<s n="2">`  
`<rs xml:id="R4">`The fighter`</rs>` is serving 30-40 years for a 1975 armed robbery conviction in `<rs xml:id="R5">`the penitentiary`</rs>`.  
`</s>`  
`<!-- ... -->`  
`<linkGrp type="periphrasis">`  
`<link targets="#R1 #R3 #R4"/>`  
`<link targets="#R2 #R5"/>`  
`</linkGrp>`

*Note* This element should only be used to encode associations not otherwise provided for by more specific elements. The location of this element within a document has no significance, unless it is included within a `<linkGrp>`, in which case it may inherit the value of the **type** attribute from the value given on the `<linkGrp>`.

**<linkGrp>** (link group) defines a collection of associations or hypertextual links.

*Module* linking

*Used by* «model.global.meta»

*May contain*

core: «ptr»

linking: «link»

*Declaration*

```
element linkGrp
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.pointing.group.attributes,
  ( link | ptr )+
}
```

*Example*

```
<linkGrp type="translation" xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"
xmlns:ns388="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <link targets="#CCS1 #SW1"/>
  <link targets="#CCS2 #SW2"/>
  <link targets="#CCS #SW"/>
</linkGrp>
<div type="volume" xml:id="CCS" xml:lang="fr">
  <p>
    <s xml:id="CCS1">Longtemps, je me suis couché de bonne heure.</s>
    <s xml:id="CCS2">Parfois, à peine ma bougie éteinte, mes yeux se
fermaient si vite que je n'avais pas le temps de me dire : "Je
m'endors."</s>
  </p>
<!-- ... -->
</div>
<div type="volume" xml:id="SW" xml:lang="en">
  <p>
    <s xml:id="SW1">For a long time I used to go to bed early.</s>
    <s xml:id="SW2">Sometimes, when I had put out my candle, my eyes would
close so quickly that I had not even time to say "I'm going to sleep."</s>
  </p>
<!-- ... -->
</div>
```

*Note* May contain one or more <link> elements only, optionally with interspersed pointer elements. A web or link group is an administrative convenience, which should be used to collect a set of links together for any purpose, not simply to supply a default value for the **type** attribute.

---

**<list>** (list) contains any sequence of items organized as a list.

*Module* core

*Used by* «keywords» «revisionDesc» «model.listLike»

*May contain*

analysis: «span»

core: «cb» «gap» «head» «headItem» «headLabel» «item» «label» «lb» «meeting»  
«milestone» «note» «pb»

figures: «figure»



iso-fs: «fLib» «fs» «fvLib»

linking: «alt» «altGrp» «anchor» «join» «joinGrp» «link» «linkGrp» «timeline»

textstructure: «byline» «closer» «dateline» «docAuthor» «docDate» «epigraph»  
«opener» «postscript» «salute» «signed» «trailer»

#### Declaration

```

element list
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute type { "ordered" | "bulleted" | "simple" | "gloss" | xsd:Name }?,
  (
    ( ( model.divTop ) | ( model.global ) )*,
    (
      ( item, model.global* )+
      | (
          headLabel?,
          headItem?,
          ( label, model.global*, item, model.global* )+
        )
    ),
    ( ( model.divBottom ), model.global* )*
  )
}

```

*Example* `<list type="ordered" xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns390="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">`  
`<item>a butcher</item>`  
`<item>a baker</item>`  
`<item>a candlestick maker, with <list type="bullets">`  
`<item>rings on his fingers</item>`  
`<item>bells on his toes</item>`  
`</list>`  
`</item>`  
`</list>`

*Example* The following example treats the short numbered clauses of Anglo-Saxon legal codes as lists of items. The text is from an ordinance of King Athelstan (924–939):

```

<div1 type="section" xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"
xmlns:ns390="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <head>Athelstan's Ordinance</head>
  <list type="ordered">
    <item n="1">Concerning thieves. First, that no thief is to be spared
who is caught with
      the stolen goods, [if he is] over twelve years and [if the value of
the goods is] over
      eightpence. <list type="ordered">
        <item n="1.1">And if anyone does spare one, he is to pay for the
thief with his
          wergild -- and the thief is to be no nearer a settlement on
that account -- or to
          clear himself by an oath of that amount.</item>
        <item n="1.2">If, however, he [the thief] wishes to defend himself
or to escape, he is
          not to be spared [whether younger or older than
twelve].</item>
        <item n="1.3">If a thief is put into prison, he is to be in prison
40 days, and he may

```

```
        then be redeemed with 120 shillings; and the kindred are to
stand surety for him
        that he will desist for ever.</item>
    <item n="1.4">And if he steals after that, they are to pay for him
with his wergild,
        or to bring him back there.</item>
    <item n="1.5">And if he steals after that, they are to pay for him
with his wergild,
        whether to the king or to him to whom it rightly belongs; and
everyone of those who
        supported him is to pay 120 shillings to the king as a
fine.</item>
</list>
</item>
    <item n="2">Concerning lordless men. And we pronounced about these
lordless men, from whom
        no justice can be obtained, that one should order their kindred to
fetch back such a
        person to justice and to find him a lord in public meeting.
<list type="ordered">
    <item n="2.1">And if they then will not, or cannot, produce him on
that appointed day,
        he is then to be a fugitive afterwards, and he who encounters
him is to strike him
        down as a thief.</item>
    <item n="2.2">And he who harbours him after that, is to pay for him
with his wergild
        or to clear himself by an oath of that amount.</item>
</list>
</item>
    <item n="3">Concerning the refusal of justice. The lord who refuses
justice and upholds
        his guilty man, so that the king is appealed to, is to repay the
value of the goods and
        120 shillings to the king; and he who appeals to the king before he
demands justice as
        often as he ought, is to pay the same fine as the other would have
done, if he had
        refused him justice. <list type="ordered">
    <item n="3.1">And the lord who is an accessory to a theft by his
slave, and it becomes
        known about him, is to forfeit the slave and be liable to his
wergild on the first
        occasionp if he does it more often, he is to be liable to pay
all that he owns.</item>
    <item n="3.2">And likewise any of the king's treasurers or of our
reeves, who has been
        an accessory of thieves who have committed theft, is to
liable to the same.</item>
</list>
</item>
    <item n="4">Concerning treachery to a lord. And we have pronounced
concerning treachery to
        a lord, that he [who is accused] is to forfeit his life if he
cannot deny it or is
        afterwards convicted at the three-fold ordeal.</item>
```

```
</list>
</div1>
```

Note that nested lists have been used so the tagging mirrors the structure indicated by the two-level numbering of the clauses. The clauses could have been treated as a one-level list with irregular numbering, if desired.

*Example* `<p xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns390="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">These decrees, most blessed Pope Hadrian, we propounded in the public council ... and they confirmed them in our hand in your stead with the sign of the Holy Cross, and afterwards inscribed with a careful pen on the paper of this page, affixing thus the sign of the Holy Cross. <list type="simple">`

- `<item>I, Eanbald, by the grace of God archbishop of the holy church of York, have subscribed to the pious and catholic validity of this document with the sign of the Holy Cross.</item>`
- `<item>I, Ælfwold, king of the people across the Humber, consenting have subscribed with the sign of the Holy Cross.</item>`
- `<item>I, Tilberht, prelate of the church of Hexham, rejoicing have subscribed with the sign of the Holy Cross.</item>`
- `<item>I, Higbald, bishop of the church of Lindisfarne, obeying have subscribed with the sign of the Holy Cross.</item>`
- `<item>I, Ethelbert, bishop of Candida Casa, suppliant, have subscribed with the sign of the Holy Cross.</item>`
- `<item>I, Ealdwulf, bishop of the church of Mayo, have subscribed with devout will.</item>`
- `<item>I, Æthelwine, bishop, have subscribed through delegates.</item>`
- `<item>I, Sicga, patrician, have subscribed with serene mind with the sign of the Holy Cross.</item>`

`</list>
</p>`

*Note* May contain an optional heading followed by a series of items, or a series of label and item pairs, the latter being optionally preceded by one or two specialized headings.

**<listBibl>** (citation list) contains a list of bibliographic citations of any kind.

*Module* core

*Used by* «listBibl»«model.listLike» «model.msItemPart»

*May contain*

core: «bibl» «biblStruct» «cb» «head» «lb» «listBibl» «milestone» «pb»  
 header: «biblFull»  
 linking: «anchor»

*Declaration*

```
element listBibl
{
```

```

    att.global.attributes,
    att.declarable.attributes,
    att.typed.attributes,
    ( model.headLike*, ( model.biblLike | model.milestoneLike | listBibl )+ )
}

```

*Example* `<listBibl xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns392="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">`  
`<head>Works consulted</head>`  
`<bibl>Blain, Clements and Grundy: Feminist Companion to Literature in English (Yale, 1990)`  
`</bibl>`  
`<biblStruct>`  
`<analytic>`  
`<title>The Interesting story of the Children in the Wood</title>`  
`</analytic>`  
`<monogr>`  
`<title>The Penny Histories</title>`  
`<author>Victor E Neuberg</author>`  
`<imprint>`  
`<publisher>OUP</publisher>`  
`<date>1968</date>`  
`</imprint>`  
`</monogr>`  
`</biblStruct>`  
`</listBibl>`

**<m>** (morpheme) represents a grammatical morpheme.

*Module analysis*

*Used by* «m» «w»«model.segLike»

*May contain*

analysis: «c» «m» «span»

core: «cb» «gap» «lb» «milestone» «note» «pb»

figures: «figure»

iso-fs: «fLib» «fs» «fvLib»

linking: «alt» «altGrp» «anchor» «join» «joinGrp» «link» «linkGrp» «seg» «timeline»

*Declaration*

```

element m
{
    att.global.attributes,
    att.segLike.attributes,
    att.typed.attributes,
    attribute baseForm { token { pattern = "(\\p{L}|\\p{N}|\\p{P}|\\p{S})+" } }?,
    ( text | model.gLike | seg | m | c | model.global )*
}

```

*Example* `<w type="adjective" xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns394="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">`  
`<w type="noun">`  
`<m type="prefix" baseForm="con">com</m>`  
`<m type="root">fort</m>`  
`</w>`

```
<m type="suffix">able</m>
</w>
```

*Note* The **type** attribute may be used to indicate the type of morpheme, taking values such as **clitic**, **prefix**, **stem**, etc. as appropriate.

**<measure>** contains a word or phrase referring to some quantity of an object or commodity, usually comprising a number, a unit, and a commodity name.

*Module* core

*Used by* «model.measureLike»

*May contain*

**analysis:** «S» «ana» «c» «m» «pc» «phr» «s» «span» «tok» «w»  
**core:** «abbr» «add» «address» «binaryObject» «cb» «choice» «corr» «date» «del»  
 «distinct» «email» «emph» «expan» «foreign» «gap» «gloss» «graphic» «hi» «lb»  
 «measure» «measureGrp» «mentioned» «milestone» «name» «note» «num» «orig»  
 «pb» «ptr» «ref» «reg» «rs» «sic» «soCalled» «term» «time» «title» «unclear»  
**figures:** «figure» «formula»  
**iso-fs:** «fLib» «fs» «fvLib»  
**linking:** «alt» «altGrp» «anchor» «join» «joinGrp» «link» «linkGrp» «seg» «timeline»

*Declaration*

```
element measure
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.measurement.attributes,
  attribute type { xsd:Name }?,
  macro.phraseSeq
```

*Example* `<measure type="weight" xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns397="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">  
 <num>2</num> pounds of flesh  
</measure>  
<measure type="currency">£10-11-6d</measure>  
<measure type="area">2 merks of old extent</measure>`

*Example* `<measure quantity="40" unit="hogshead" commodity="rum" xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns397="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">2 score hh rum</measure>  
<measure quantity="12" unit="count" commodity="roses">1 doz. roses</measure>  
<measure quantity="1" unit="count" commodity="tulips">a yellow tulip</measure>`

**<measureGrp>** (measure group) contains a group of dimensional specifications which relate to the same object, for example the height and width of a manuscript page.

*Module* core

*Used by* «model.measureLike»

*May contain*

**core:** «measure» «measureGrp» «num»

*Declaration*

```

element measureGrp
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.measurement.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  ( text | model.gLike | model.measureLike ) *
}

```

*Example* `<measureGrp type="leaves" unit="mm" xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns400="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">  
 <height scope="range">157-160</height>  
 <width quantity="105"/>  
</measureGrp>  
<measureGrp type="ruledArea" unit="mm">  
 <height scope="most" quantity="90"/>  
 <width scope="most" quantity="48"/>  
</measureGrp>  
<measureGrp type="box" unit="in">  
 <height quantity="12"/>  
 <width quantity="10"/>  
 <depth quantity="6"/>  
</measureGrp>`

**<meeting>** contains the formalized descriptive title for a meeting or conference, for use in a bibliographic description for an item derived from such a meeting, or as a heading or preamble to publications emanating from it.

*Module core*

*Used by* «monogr» «model.divWrapper» «model.respLike»

*May contain*

core: «abbr» «address» «bibl» «biblStruct» «choice» «cit» «date» «desc» «distinct»  
 «email» «emph» «expan» «foreign» «gloss» «label» «list» «listBibl» «measure»  
 «measureGrp» «mentioned» «name» «num» «ptr» «q» «quote» «ref» «rs» «said»  
 «soCalled» «stage» «term» «time» «title»

figures: «table»

header: «biblFull»

*Declaration*

```

element meeting { att.global.attributes, macro.limitedContent }

```

*Example* `<div xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns402="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">  
 <meeting>Ninth International Conference on Middle High German Textual  
 Criticism, Aachen,  
 June 1998.</meeting>  
 <list type="attendance">  
 <head>List of Participants</head>  
 <item>  
 <persName>...</persName>  
 </item>  
 <item>`

```

    <persName>...</persName>
  </item>
<!--...-->
</list>
<p>...</p>
</div>

```

**<mentioned>** marks words or phrases mentioned, not used.

*Module* core

*Used by* «model.emphLike»

*May contain*

**analysis:** «S» «ana» «c» «m» «pc» «phr» «s» «span» «tok» «w»

**core:** «abbr» «add» «address» «binaryObject» «cb» «choice» «corr» «date» «del»  
 «distinct» «email» «emph» «expan» «foreign» «gap» «gloss» «graphic» «hi» «lb»  
 «measure» «measureGrp» «mentioned» «milestone» «name» «note» «num» «orig»  
 «pb» «ptr» «ref» «reg» «rs» «sic» «soCalled» «term» «time» «title» «unclear»

**figures:** «figure» «formula»

**iso-fs:** «fLib» «fs» «fvLib»

**linking:** «alt» «altGrp» «anchor» «join» «joinGrp» «link» «linkGrp» «seg» «timeline»

*Declaration*

```

element mentioned { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }

```

*Example* There is thus a striking accentual difference between a verbal form like

```

<mentioned xml:id="X234" xml:lang="el"
xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"
xmlns:ns403="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">eluthemen</mentioned>
<gloss target="#X234">we were released,</gloss> accented on the second
syllable of the
word, and its participial derivative
<mentioned xml:id="X235" xml:lang="el">lutheis</mentioned>
<gloss target="#X235">released,</gloss> accented on the last.

```

**<milestone/>** marks a boundary point separating any kind of section of a text, typically but not necessarily indicating a point at which some part of a standard reference system changes, where the change is not represented by a structural element.

*Module* core

*Used by* «model.milestoneLike»

*May contain* Empty element

*Declaration*

```

element milestone
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.sourced.attributes,
  attribute unit
  {

```

```

        "page"
    | "column"
    | "line"
    | "book"
    | "poem"
    | "canto"
    | "speaker"
    | "stanza"
    | "act"
    | "scene"
    | "section"
    | "absent"
    | "unnumbered"
    | xsd:Name
    },
    empty
}

```

*Example* `<milestone n="23" ed="La" unit="Dreissiger" xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns404="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0"/> ... <milestone n="24" ed="AV" unit="verse"/> ...`

*Note* For this element, the global **n** attribute indicates the new number or other value for the unit which changes at this milestone. The special value *unnumbered* should be used in passages which fall outside the normal numbering scheme, such as chapter or other headings, poem numbers or titles, etc. The order in which milestone elements are given at a given point is not normally significant.

**<monogr>** (monographic level) contains bibliographic elements describing an item (e.g. a book or journal) published as an independent item (i.e. as a separate physical object).

*Module core*

*Used by* «biblStruct»

*May contain*

**core:** «author» «biblScope» «editor» «imprint» «meeting» «note» «respStmt» «title»

**header:** «edition» «extent» «idno»

*Declaration*

```

element monogr
{
  att.global.attributes,
  (
    (
      (
        ( author | editor | respStmt ),
        ( author | editor | respStmt )*,
        title+,
        ( idno | editor | respStmt )*
      )
      | ( title+, ( idno | author | editor | respStmt )* )
    )?,
    ( model.noteLike | meeting )*,
    ( edition, ( idno | editor | respStmt )* )*,
    imprint,
  )
}

```



```

    ( imprint | extent | biblScope ) *
  )
}

```

*Example* `<biblStruct xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns407="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">  
 <analytic>  
 <author>Chesnutt, David</author>  
 <title>Historical Editions in the States</title>  
 </analytic>  
 <monogr>  
 <title level="j">Computers and the Humanities</title>  
 <imprint>  
 <biblScope>25.6</biblScope>  
 <date when="1991-12">(December, 1991):</date>  
 <biblScope>377-380</biblScope>  
 </imprint>  
 </monogr>  
</biblStruct>`

*Example* `<biblStruct type="book" xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns407="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">  
 <monogr>  
 <author>  
 <persName>  
 <forename>Leo Joachim</forename>  
 <surname>Frachtenberg</surname>  
 </persName>  
 </author>  
 <title type="main" level="m">Lower Umpqua Texts</title>  
 <imprint>  
 <pubPlace>New York</pubPlace>  
 <publisher>Columbia University Press</publisher>  
 <date>1914</date>  
 </imprint>  
 </monogr>  
 <series>  
 <title type="main" level="s">Columbia University Contributions to  
 Anthropology</title>  
 <biblScope type="vol">4</biblScope>  
 </series>  
</biblStruct>`

*Note* May contain specialized bibliographic elements, in a prescribed order. The `<monogr>` element may only occur only within a `<biblStruct>`, where its use is mandatory for the description of an monographic level bibliographic item.

**<name>** (name, proper noun) contains a proper noun or noun phrase.

*Module* core

*Used by* «model.nameLike.agent»

*May contain*

analysis: «S» «ana» «c» «m» «pc» «phr» «s» «span» «tok» «w»

core: «abbr» «add» «address» «binaryObject» «cb» «choice» «corr» «date» «del»  
 «distinct» «email» «emph» «expand» «foreign» «gap» «gloss» «graphic» «hi» «lb»

«measure» «measureGrp» «mentioned» «milestone» «name» «note» «num» «orig»  
 «pb» «ptr» «ref» «reg» «rs» «sic» «soCalled» «term» «time» «title» «unclear»  
 figures: «figure» «formula»  
 iso-fs: «fLib» «fs» «fvLib»  
 linking: «alt» «altGrp» «anchor» «join» «joinGrp» «link» «linkGrp» «seg» «timeline»

*Declaration*

```

element name
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}

```

*Example* `<name type="person" xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns408="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">Thomas Hoccleve</name>`  
`<name type="place">Villingaholt</name>`  
`<name type="org">Vetus Latina Institut</name>`  
`<name type="person" ref="#HOC001">Occeleve</name>`

*Note* Proper nouns referring to people, places, and organizations may be tagged instead with `<persName>`, `<placeName>`, or `<orgName>`, when the TEI module for names and dates is included.

**<namespace>** supplies the formal name of the namespace to which the elements documented by its children belong.

*Module header*

*Used by* «tagsDecl»

*May contain*

header: «tagUsage»

*Declaration*

```

element namespace
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute name { xsd:anyURI },
  tagUsage+
}

```

*Example* `<namespace name="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0" xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns410="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">`  
`<tagUsage`  
`gi="hi"`  
`occurs="28"`  
`withId="2"`  
`render="#it"> Used only to mark English words`  
`italicised in the copy text </tagUsage>`  
`</namespace>`

**<normalization>** indicates the extent of normalization or regularization of the original source carried out in converting it to electronic form.

*Module header*

*Used by* «model.editorialDeclPart»

*May contain*

core: «p»

linking: «ab»

*Declaration*

```

element normalization
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  attribute source { xsd:anyURI }?,
  attribute method { "silent" | "markup" }?,
  model.pLike+
}

```

```

Example <editorialDecl xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"
xmlns:ns412="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <normalization method="markup">
    <p>Where both upper- and lower-case i, j, u, v, and vv have been
normalized, to modern
      20th century typographical practice, the <gi>choice</gi> element
has been used to
      enclose <gi>orig</gi> and <gi>reg</gi> elements giving the original
and new values
      respectively. ... </p>
  </normalization>
  <normalization method="silent">
    <p>Spacing between words and following punctuation has been regularized
to zero spaces;
      spacing between words has been regularized to one space.</p>
  </normalization>
  <normalization source="http://www.dict.sztaki.hu/webster">
    <p>Spelling converted throughout to Modern American usage, based on
Websters 9th
      Collegiate dictionary.</p>
  </normalization>
</editorialDecl>

```

**<note>** contains a note or annotation.

*Module core*

*Used by* «model.noteLike»

*May contain*

analysis: «S» «ana» «c» «m» «pc» «phr» «s» «span» «tok» «w»

core: «abbr» «add» «address» «bibl» «biblStruct» «binaryObject» «cb» «choice» «cit»  
«corr» «date» «del» «desc» «distinct» «email» «emph» «expan» «foreign» «gap»  
«gloss» «graphic» «hi» «l» «label» «lb» «lg» «list» «listBibl» «measure»  
«measureGrp» «mentioned» «milestone» «name» «note» «num» «orig» «p» «pb»  
«ptr» «q» «quote» «ref» «reg» «rs» «said» «sic» «soCalled» «sp» «stage» «term»  
«time» «title» «unclear»

figures: «figure» «formula» «table»

header: «biblFull»

iso-fs: «fLib» «fs» «fvLib»

linking: «ab» «alt» «altGrp» «anchor» «join» «joinGrp» «link» «linkGrp» «seg»  
«timeline»

### Declaration

```

element note
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.placement.attributes,
  att.responsibility.attributes,
  attribute type { xsd:Name }?,
  attribute anchored { xsd:boolean }?,
  attribute target { list { xsd:anyURI+ } }?,
  attribute targetEnd { list { xsd:anyURI+ } }?,
  macro.specialPara}

```

*Example* In the following example, the translator has supplied a footnote containing an explanation of the term translated as "painterly":

```

And yet it is not only
in the great line of Italian renaissance art, but even in the
painterly <note place="foot" type="gloss" resp="#MDMH"
xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"
xmlns:ns415="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <term xml:lang="de">Malerisch</term>. This word has, in the German, two
distinct meanings, one objective, a quality residing in the object,
the other subjective, a mode of apprehension and creation. To avoid
confusion, they have been distinguished in English as
<mentioned>picturesque</mentioned> and
<mentioned>painterly</mentioned> respectively.
</note> style of the
Dutch genre painters of the seventeenth century that drapery has this
psychological significance.

```

For this example to be valid, the code MDMH must be defined elsewhere, for example by means of a responsibility statement in the associated TEI Header:

```

<respStmt xml:id="MDMH" xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"
xmlns:ns415="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <resp>translation from German to English</resp>
  <name>Hottinger, Marie Donald Mackie</name>
</respStmt>

```

*Example* The global **n** attribute may be used to supply the symbol or number used to mark the note's point of attachment in the source text, as in the following example:

```

Mevorakh b. Saadya's mother, the matriarch of the
family during the second half of the eleventh century,
<note n="126" anchored="true" xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"
xmlns:ns415="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0"> The
alleged mention of Judah Nagid's mother in a letter from 1071 is, in fact,
a reference to
Judah's children; cf. above, nn. 111 and 54. </note> is well known from
Geniza documents
published by Jacob Mann.

```

However, if notes are numbered in sequence and their numbering can be reconstructed automatically by processing software, it may well be considered unnecessary to record the note numbers.

**<notesStmt>** (notes statement) collects together any notes providing information about a text additional to that recorded in other parts of the bibliographic description.

*Module header*

*Used by* «biblFull» «fileDesc»

*May contain*

core: «note»

*Declaration*

```
element notesStmt { att.global.attributes, model.noteLike+ }
```

*Example* **<notesStmt** xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns418="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">  
 <note>Historical commentary provided by Mark Cohen</note>  
 <note>OCR scanning done at University of Toronto</note>  
 </notesStmt>

*Note* Information of different kinds should not be grouped together into the same note.

**<num>** (number) contains a number, written in any form.

*Module core*

*Used by* «model.measureLike»

*May contain*

analysis: «S» «ana» «c» «m» «pc» «phr» «s» «span» «tok» «w»

core: «abbr» «add» «address» «binaryObject» «cb» «choice» «corr» «date» «del»  
 «distinct» «email» «emph» «expan» «foreign» «gap» «gloss» «graphic» «hi» «lb»  
 «measure» «measureGrp» «mentioned» «milestone» «name» «note» «num» «orig»  
 «pb» «ptr» «ref» «reg» «rs» «sic» «soCalled» «term» «time» «title» «unclear»

figures: «figure» «formula»

iso-fs: «fLib» «fs» «fvLib»

linking: «alt» «altGrp» «anchor» «join» «joinGrp» «link» «linkGrp» «seg» «timeline»

*Declaration*

```
element num
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.ranging.attributes,
  attribute type
  {
    "cardinal" | "ordinal" | "fraction" | "percentage" | xsd:Name
  }?,
  attribute value
  {
    xsd:double | token { pattern = "(\\-?[\\d]+/\\-?[\\d]+)" } | xsd:decimal
  }?,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

*Example* **<p** xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns419="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">I reached  
 <num type="cardinal" value="21">twenty-one</num> on my  
 <num type="ordinal" value="21">twenty-first</num> birthday... light  
 travels at <num value="10E10">10<hi rend="sup">10</hi>  
 </num> cm per second.</p>

*Note* Detailed analyses of quantities and units of measure in historical documents may also use the feature structure mechanism described in chapter «FS». The <num> element is intended for use in simple applications.

**<numeric/>** (numeric value) represents the value part of a feature-value specification which contains a numeric value or range.

*Module* iso-fs

*Used by* «model.featureVal.single»

*May contain* Empty element

*Declaration*

```

element numeric
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute value
  {
    xsd:double | token { pattern = "(\\-?[\\d]+/\\-?[\\d]+)" } | xsd:decimal
  },
  attribute max
  {
    xsd:double | token { pattern = "(\\-?[\\d]+/\\-?[\\d]+)" } | xsd:decimal
  }?,
  attribute trunc { xsd:boolean }?,
  empty
}

```

*Example* <numeric value="42" xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns422="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0"/>

This represents the numeric value 42.

*Example* <numeric value="42.45" max="50" trunc="true" xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns422="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0"/>

This represents any of the nine possible integer values between 42 and 50 inclusive. If the **trunc** attribute had the value FALSE, this example would represent any of the infinite number of numeric values between 42.45 and 50.0

*Note* It is an error to supply the **max** attribute in the absence of a value for the **value** attribute.

**<opener>** groups together dateline, byline, salutation, and similar phrases appearing as a preliminary group at the start of a division, especially of a letter.

*Module* textstructure

*Used by* «model.divTopPart»

*May contain*

**analysis:** «S» «ana» «c» «m» «pc» «phr» «s» «span» «tok» «w»

**core:** «abbr» «add» «address» «binaryObject» «cb» «choice» «corr» «date» «del» «distinct» «email» «emph» «expan» «foreign» «gap» «gloss» «graphic» «hi» «lb» «measure» «measureGrp» «mentioned» «milestone» «name» «note» «num» «orig» «pb» «ptr» «ref» «reg» «rs» «sic» «soCalled» «term» «time» «title» «unclear»

**figures:** «figure» «formula»

iso-fs: «fLib» «fs» «fvLib»  
 linking: «alt» «altGrp» «anchor» «join» «joinGrp» «link» «linkGrp» «seg» «timeline»  
 textstructure: «byline» «dateline» «epigraph» «salute» «signed»

#### Declaration

```

element opener
{
  att.global.attributes,
  (
    text
    | model.gLike      | model.phrase      | byline      | dateline      | epigraph
  )
}

```

*Example* `<opener xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns425="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">  
 <dateline>Walden, this 29. of August 1592</dateline>  
 </opener>`

*Example* `<opener xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns425="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">  
 <dateline>  
 <name type="place">Great Marlborough Street</name>  
 <date>November 11, 1848</date>  
 </dateline>  
 <salute>My dear Sir,</salute>  
 </opener>  
 <p>I am sorry to say that absence from town and other circumstances have prevented me from earlier enquiring...</p>`

**<orig>** (original form) contains a reading which is marked as following the original, rather than being normalized or corrected.

*Module core*

*Used by* «model.pPart.transcriptional» «model.choicePart»

*May contain*

analysis: «S» «ana» «c» «m» «pc» «phr» «s» «span» «tok» «w»  
 core: «abbr» «add» «address» «bibl» «biblStruct» «binaryObject» «cb» «choice» «cit»  
 «corr» «date» «del» «desc» «distinct» «email» «emph» «expan» «foreign» «gap»  
 «gloss» «graphic» «hi» «label» «lb» «list» «listBibl» «measure» «measureGrp»  
 «mentioned» «milestone» «name» «note» «num» «orig» «pb» «ptr» «q» «quote»  
 «ref» «reg» «rs» «said» «sic» «soCalled» «stage» «term» «time» «title» «unclear»  
 figures: «figure» «formula» «table»  
 header: «biblFull»  
 iso-fs: «fLib» «fs» «fvLib»  
 linking: «alt» «altGrp» «anchor» «join» «joinGrp» «link» «linkGrp» «seg» «timeline»

*Declaration*

```

element orig { att.global.attributes, macro.paraContent }

```

*Example* If all that is desired is to call attention to the original version in the copy text, <orig> may be used alone:

```
<l xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"
xmlns:ns426="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">But this will be a
<orig>meere</orig> confusion</l>
<l>And hardly shall we all be <orig>vnderstoode</orig>
</l>
```

*Example* More usually, an `<orig>` will be combined with a regularized form within a `<choice>` element:

```
<l xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"
xmlns:ns426="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">But this will be a <choice>
<orig>meere</orig>
<reg>mere</reg>
</choice> confusion</l>
<l>And hardly shall we all be <choice>
<orig>vnderstoode</orig>
<reg>understood</reg>
</choice>
</l>
```

**<p>** (paragraph) marks paragraphs in prose.

*Module core*

*Used by* «model.pLike»

*May contain*

**analysis:** «S» «ana» «c» «m» «pc» «phr» «s» «span» «tok» «w»

**core:** «abbr» «add» «address» «bibl» «biblStruct» «binaryObject» «cb» «choice» «cit» «corr» «date» «del» «desc» «distinct» «email» «emph» «expan» «foreign» «gap» «gloss» «graphic» «hi» «label» «lb» «list» «listBibl» «measure» «measureGrp» «mentioned» «milestone» «name» «note» «num» «orig» «pb» «ptr» «q» «quote» «ref» «reg» «rs» «said» «sic» «soCalled» «stage» «term» «time» «title» «unclear»

**figures:** «figure» «formula» «table»

**header:** «biblFull»

**iso-fs:** «fLib» «fs» «fvLib»

**linking:** «alt» «altGrp» «anchor» «join» «joinGrp» «link» «linkGrp» «seg» «timeline»

*Declaration*

```
element p
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  macro.paraContent }
```

*Example* `<p xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"
xmlns:ns427="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">Hallgerd was outside. <q>There
is blood on your axe,</q> she said. <q>What have you
done?</q>
</p>
<p>
<q>I have now arranged that you can be married a second time,</q> replied
Thjostolf.
</p>
<p>
<q>Then you must mean that Thorvald is dead,</q> she said.`



```

</p>
<p>
  <q>Yes,</q> said Thjostolf.  <q>And now you must think up some plan for
me.</q>
</p>

```

**<particDesc>** (participation description) describes the identifiable speakers, voices, or other participants in a linguistic interaction.

*Module* corpus

*Used by* «model.profileDescPart»

*May contain*

core: «p»

linking: «ab»

*Declaration*

```

element particDesc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  ( model.pLike+ | model.personLike+ )
}

```

*Example*

```

<particDesc xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"
xmlns:ns429="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <listPerson>
    <person xml:id="P-1234" sex="2" age="mid">
      <p>Female informant, well-educated, born in Shropshire
        UK, 12 Jan 1950, of unknown occupation.
        Speaks French fluently. Socio-Economic status B2.</p>
    </person>
    <person xml:id="P-4332" sex="1">
      <persName>
        <surname>Hancock</surname>
        <forename>Antony</forename>
        <forename>Aloysius</forename>
        <forename>St John</forename>
      </persName>
      <residence notAfter="1959">
        <address>
          <street>Railway Cuttings</street>
          <settlement>East Cheam</settlement>
        </address>
      </residence>
      <occupation>comedian</occupation>
    </person>
    <relationGrp>
      <relation type="personal" name="spouse" mutual="#P-1234 #P-4332"/>
    </relationGrp>
  </listPerson>
</particDesc>

```

This example shows both a very simple person description, and a very detailed one, using some of the more specialised elements from the module for Names and Dates.

*Note* May contain a prose description organized as paragraphs, or a structured list of persons and person groups, with an optional formal specification of any relationships amongst them.

---

**<pb/>** (page break) marks the boundary between one page of a text and the next in a standard reference system.

*Module* core

*Used by* «model.milestoneLike»

*May contain* Empty element

*Declaration*

```
element pb
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.sourced.attributes,
  empty
}
```

*Example* Page numbers may vary in different editions of a text.

```
<p xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"
xmlns:ns431="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0"> ... <pb n="145" ed="ed2"/>
<!-- Page 145 in edition "ed2" starts here -> ... <pb n="283" ed="ed1"/>
<!-- Page 283 in edition "ed1" starts here-> ... </p>
```

*Example* A page break may be associated with a facsimile image of the page it introduces by means of the **facts** attribute

```
<TEI xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"
xmlns:ns431="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <teiHeader>
    <!--...-->
  </teiHeader>
  <text>
    <pb n="1" facts="page1.png"/>
    <!-- page1.png contains an image of the page; the text it contains is
    encoded here ->
    <pb n="2" facts="page2.png"/>
    <!-- similarly, for page 2 ->
  </text>
</TEI>
```

*Note* By convention, <pb> elements should appear at the start of the page to which they refer. The global **n** attribute indicates the number or other value associated with the page which follows. This will normally be the page number or signature printed on it, since the physical sequence number is implicit in the presence of the <pb> element itself. The **type** attribute may be used to characterize the page break in any respect, for example as word-breaking or not.

---

**<pc>** (punctuation character) a character or string of characters regarded as constituting a single punctuation mark.

*Module* analysis

*Used by* «model.segLike»

*May contain*

analysis: «c»

*Declaration*

```

element pc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.segLike.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  attribute force { "strong" | "weak" | "inter" }?,
  attribute unit { xsd:Name }?,
  attribute pre { xsd:boolean }?,
  ( text | model.gLike | c ) *
}

```

```

Example <phr xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"
xmlns:ns433="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <w>do</w>
  <w>you</w>
  <w>understand</w>
  <pc type="interrogative">?</pc>
</phr>

```

*Note* .

**<phr>** (phrase) represents a grammatical phrase.

*Module analysis*

*Used by* «model.segLike»

*May contain*

**analysis:** «S» «ana» «c» «m» «pc» «phr» «s» «span» «tok» «w»

**core:** «abbr» «add» «address» «binaryObject» «cb» «choice» «corr» «date» «del»  
 «distinct» «email» «emph» «expan» «foreign» «gap» «gloss» «graphic» «hi» «lb»  
 «measure» «measureGrp» «mentioned» «milestone» «name» «note» «num» «orig»  
 «pb» «ptr» «ref» «reg» «rs» «sic» «soCalled» «term» «time» «title» «unclear»

**figures:** «figure» «formula»

**iso-fs:** «fLib» «fs» «fvLib»

**linking:** «alt» «altGrp» «anchor» «join» «joinGrp» «link» «linkGrp» «seg» «timeline»

*Declaration*

```

element phr
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.segLike.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}

```

```

Example <phr type="verb" function="extraposted_modifier"
xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"
xmlns:ns436="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">To talk
<phr type="preposition" function="complement">of
<phr type="noun" function="object">many things</phr>
</phr>
</phr>

```

*Note* The **type** attribute may be used to indicate the type of phrase, taking values such as **noun**, **verb**, **preposition**, etc. as appropriate.

**<postBox>** (postal box or post office box) contains a number or other identifier for some postal delivery point other than a street address.

*Module* core

*Used by* «model.addrPart»

*May contain* Character data only

*Declaration* `element postBox { att.global.attributes, text }`

*Example* `<postBox xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns438="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">P.O. Box 280</postBox>`

*Example* `<postBox xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns438="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">Postbus 532</postBox>`

*Note* The position and nature of postal codes is highly country-specific; the conventions appropriate to the country concerned should be used.

---

**<postCode>** (postal code) contains a numerical or alphanumeric code used as part of a postal address to simplify sorting or delivery of mail.

*Module* core

*Used by* «model.addrPart»

*May contain* Character data only

*Declaration* `element postCode { att.global.attributes, text }`

*Example* `<postCode xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns439="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">HR1 3LR</postCode>`

*Example* `<postCode xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns439="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">60142-7</postCode>`

*Note* The position and nature of postal codes is highly country-specific; the conventions appropriate to the country concerned should be used.

---

**<postscript>** contains a postscript, e.g. to a letter.

*Module* textstructure

*Used by* «model.divBottomPart»

*May contain*

analysis: «span»

core: «bibl» «biblStruct» «cb» «cit» «desc» «gap» «l» «label» «lb» «lg» «list»  
«listBibl» «milestone» «note» «p» «pb» «q» «quote» «said» «sp» «stage»

figures: «figure» «table»

header: «biblFull»

iso-fs: «fLib» «fs» «fvLib»

linking: «ab» «alt» «altGrp» «anchor» «join» «joinGrp» «link» «linkGrp» «timeline»

*Declaration*

```
element postscript
{
  att.global.attributes,
```

```
( ( model.common ) | ( model.global ) ) *
}
```

*Example* `<div type="letter" xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns440="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">`  
`<opener>`  
`<dateline>`  
`<placeName>Rimaone</placeName>`  
`<date when="2006-11-21">21 Nov 06</date>`  
`</dateline>`  
`<salute>Dear Susan,</salute>`  
`</opener>`  
`<p>Thank you very much for the assistance splitting those logs. I'm sorry about the misunderstanding as to the size of the task. I really was not asking for help, only to borrow the axe. Hope you had fun in any case.</p>`  
`<closer>`  
`<salute>Sincerely yours,</salute>`  
`<signed>Seymour</signed>`  
`</closer>`  
`<postscript>`  
`<label>P.S.</label>`  
`<p>The collision occured on <date when="2001-07-06">06 Jul 01</date>.</p>`  
`</postscript>`  
`</div>`

**<principal>** (principal researcher) supplies the name of the principal researcher responsible for the creation of an electronic text.

*Module header*

*Used by* «model.respLike»

*May contain*

analysis: «span»

core: «abbr» «address» «cb» «choice» «date» «distinct» «email» «emph» «expan»  
 «foreign» «gap» «gloss» «lb» «measure» «measureGrp» «mentioned» «milestone»  
 «name» «note» «num» «pb» «ptr» «ref» «rs» «soCalled» «term» «time» «title»

figures: «figure»

iso-fs: «fLib» «fs» «fvLib»

linking: «alt» «altGrp» «anchor» «join» «joinGrp» «link» «linkGrp» «timeline»

*Declaration*

```
element principal { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq.limited }
```

*Example* `<principal xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns441="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">Gary Taylor</principal>`

**<profileDesc>** (text-profile description) provides a detailed description of non-bibliographic aspects of a text, specifically the languages and sublanguages used, the situation in which it was produced, the participants and their setting.

*Module header*

Used by «model.teiHeaderPart»

May contain

corpus: «particDesc»

header: «creation» «langUsage» «textClass»

Declaration

```
element profileDesc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( creation?, model.profileDescPart* )
}
```

```
Example <profileDesc xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"
xmlns:ns442="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <langUsage>
    <language ident="fr">French</language>
  </langUsage>
  <textDesc n="novel">
    <channel mode="w">print; part issues</channel>
    <constitution type="single"/>
    <derivation type="original"/>
    <domain type="art"/>
    <factuality type="fiction"/>
    <interaction type="none"/>
    <preparedness type="prepared"/>
    <purpose type="entertain" degree="high"/>
    <purpose type="inform" degree="medium"/>
  </textDesc>
  <settingDesc>
    <setting>
      <name>Paris, France</name>
      <time>Late 19th century</time>
    </setting>
  </settingDesc>
</profileDesc>
```

---

**<projectDesc>** (project description) describes in detail the aim or purpose for which an electronic file was encoded, together with any other relevant information concerning the process by which it was assembled or collected.

Module header

Used by «model.encodingDescPart»

May contain

core: «p»

linking: «ab»

Declaration

```
element projectDesc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  model.pLike+
}
```

---

*Example* `<projectDesc xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns443="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">  
<p>Texts collected for use in the Claremont Shakespeare Clinic, June 1990</p>  
</projectDesc>`

---

**<ptr/>** (pointer) defines a pointer to another location.

*Module* core

*Used by* «altGrp» «joinGrp» «linkGrp»«model.ptrLike»

*May contain* Empty element

*Declaration*

```

element ptr
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.pointing.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  (
    attribute target { list { xsd:anyURI+ } }
    | attribute cRef
      {
        list { token { pattern = "(\\p{L}|\\p{N}|\\p{P}|\\p{S})+" }+ }
      }
  ),
  empty
}

```

`<report xmlns="http://purl.oclc.org/dsdl/schematron" test="@target and @cRef">the target and cRef attributes are mutually exclusive.</report>`

*Example* `<ptr target="#p143 #p144" xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns445="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0"/>  
<ptr target="http://www.tei-c.org"/>`

*Note* The **target** and **cRef** attributes are mutually exclusive.

---

**<pubPlace>** (publication place) contains the name of the place where a bibliographic item was published.

*Module* core

*Used by* «docImprint» «model.imprintPart» «model.publicationStmtPart»

*May contain*

**analysis:** «S» «ana» «c» «m» «pc» «phr» «s» «span» «tok» «w»

**core:** «abbr» «add» «address» «binaryObject» «cb» «choice» «corr» «date» «del» «distinct» «email» «emph» «expan» «foreign» «gap» «gloss» «graphic» «hi» «lb» «measure» «measureGrp» «mentioned» «milestone» «name» «note» «num» «orig» «pb» «ptr» «ref» «reg» «rs» «sic» «soCalled» «term» «time» «title» «unclear»

**figures:** «figure» «formula»

**iso-fs:** «fLib» «fs» «fvLib»

**linking:** «alt» «altGrp» «anchor» «join» «joinGrp» «link» «linkGrp» «seg» «timeline»

*Declaration*

```
element pubPlace
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

```
Example <publicationStmt xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"
xmlns:ns448="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <publisher>Oxford University Press</publisher>
  <pubPlace>Oxford</pubPlace>
  <date>1989</date>
</publicationStmt>
```

---

**<publicationStmt>** (publication statement) groups information concerning the publication or distribution of an electronic or other text.

*Module header*

*Used by* «biblFull» «fileDesc»

*May contain*

core: «address» «date» «p» «pubPlace» «publisher»  
header: «authority» «availability» «distributor» «idno»  
linking: «ab»

*Declaration*

```
element publicationStmt
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( model.pLike+ | model.publicationStmtPart+ )
}
```

```
Example <publicationStmt xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"
xmlns:ns450="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <publisher>C. Muquardt </publisher>
  <pubPlace>Bruxelles & Leipzig</pubPlace>
  <date when="1846"/>
</publicationStmt>
```

```
Example <publicationStmt xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"
xmlns:ns450="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <publisher>Chadwyck Healey</publisher>
  <pubPlace>Cambridge</pubPlace>
  <availability>
    <p>Available under licence only</p>
  </availability>
  <date when="1992">1992</date>
</publicationStmt>
```

*Note* Although not enforced by the schemas, it is a requirement for TEI conformance that information about publication place, address, identifier, availability, and date be given in that order, following the name of the publisher, distributor, or authority concerned

---



**<publisher>** provides the name of the organization responsible for the publication or distribution of a bibliographic item.

*Module* core

*Used by* «docImprint»«model.imprintPart» «model.publicationStmtPart»

*May contain*

analysis: «S» «ana» «c» «m» «pc» «phr» «s» «span» «tok» «w»

core: «abbr» «add» «address» «binaryObject» «cb» «choice» «corr» «date» «del»  
«distinct» «email» «emph» «expan» «foreign» «gap» «gloss» «graphic» «hi» «lb»  
«measure» «measureGrp» «mentioned» «milestone» «name» «note» «num» «orig»  
«pb» «ptr» «ref» «reg» «rs» «sic» «soCalled» «term» «time» «title» «unclear»

figures: «figure» «formula»

iso-fs: «fLib» «fs» «fvLib»

linking: «alt» «altGrp» «anchor» «join» «joinGrp» «link» «linkGrp» «seg» «timeline»

*Declaration*

```
element publisher { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```

*Example* `<imprint xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"
xmlns:ns451="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
<pubPlace>Oxford</pubPlace>
<publisher>Clarendon Press</publisher>
<date>1987</date>
</imprint>`

*Note* Use the full form of the name by which a company is usually referred to, rather than any abbreviation of it which may appear on a title page

**<q>** (separated from the surrounding text with quotation marks) contains material which is marked as (ostensibly) being somehow different than the surrounding text, for any one of a variety of reasons including, but not limited to: direct speech or thought, technical terms or jargon, authorial distance, quotations from elsewhere, and passages that are mentioned but not used.

*Module* core

*Used by* «s»«model.qLike»

*May contain*

analysis: «S» «ana» «c» «m» «pc» «phr» «s» «span» «tok» «w»

core: «abbr» «add» «address» «bibl» «biblStruct» «binaryObject» «cb» «choice» «cit»  
«corr» «date» «del» «desc» «distinct» «email» «emph» «expan» «foreign» «gap»  
«gloss» «graphic» «hi» «l» «label» «lb» «lg» «list» «listBibl» «measure»  
«measureGrp» «mentioned» «milestone» «name» «note» «num» «orig» «p» «pb»  
«ptr» «q» «quote» «ref» «reg» «rs» «said» «sic» «soCalled» «sp» «stage» «term»  
«time» «title» «unclear»

figures: «figure» «formula» «table»

header: «biblFull»

iso-fs: «fLib» «fs» «fvLib»

linking: «ab» «alt» «altGrp» «anchor» «join» «joinGrp» «link» «linkGrp» «seg»  
«timeline»

*Declaration*

```
element q
{
```

```

att.global.attributes,
att.ascribed.attributes,
attribute type
{
  "spoken"
  | "thought"
  | "written"
  | "soCalled"
  | "foreign"
  | "distinct"
  | "term"
  | "emph"
  | "mentioned"
  | xsd:Name
}?,
macro.specialPara}

```

*Example* It is spelled `<q xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns452="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">Tübingen</q>` -- to enter the letter `<q>u</q>` with an umlaut hold down the `<q>option</q>` key and press `<q>0 0 f c</q>`

*Note* May be used to indicate that a passage is distinguished from the surrounding text by quotation marks for reasons concerning which no claim is made. When used in this manner, `<q>` may be thought of as syntactic sugar for `<hi>` with a value of **rend** that indicates the use of quotation marks.

**<quotation>** specifies editorial practice adopted with respect to quotation marks in the original.

*Module header*

*Used by* «model.editorialDeclPart»

*May contain*

core: «p»

linking: «ab»

*Declaration*

```

element quotation
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  attribute marks { "none" | "some" | "all" }?,
  attribute form { text }?,
  model.pLike+
}

```

*Example* `<quotation marks="none" xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns455="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">`  
`<p>`No quotation marks have been retained. Instead, the `<att>rend</att>` attribute on the `<gi>q</gi>` element is used to specify what kinds of quotation mark was used, according to the following list: `<list type="gloss">`  
`<label>dq</label>`  
`<item>double quotes, open and close</item>`

```

<label>sq</label>
<item>single quotes, open and close</item>
<label>dash</label>
<item>long dash open, no close</item>
<label>dg</label>
<item>double guillemets, open and close</item>
</list>
</p>
</quotation>

```

*Example* `<quotation marks="all" xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns455="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">`  
`<p>All quotation marks are retained in the text and are represented by appropriate Unicode characters.</p>`  
`</quotation>`

**<quote>** (quotation) contains a phrase or passage attributed by the narrator or author to some agency external to the text.

*Module* core

*Used by* «model.quoteLike»

*May contain*

**analysis:** «S» «ana» «c» «m» «pc» «phr» «s» «span» «tok» «w»

**core:** «abbr» «add» «address» «bibl» «biblStruct» «binaryObject» «cb» «choice» «cit» «corr» «date» «del» «desc» «distinct» «email» «emph» «expan» «foreign» «gap» «gloss» «graphic» «hi» «l» «label» «lb» «lg» «list» «listBibl» «measure» «measureGrp» «mentioned» «milestone» «name» «note» «num» «orig» «p» «pb» «ptr» «q» «quote» «ref» «reg» «rs» «said» «sic» «soCalled» «sp» «stage» «term» «time» «title» «unclear»

**figures:** «figure» «formula» «table»

**header:** «biblFull»

**iso-fs:** «fLib» «fs» «fvLib»

**linking:** «ab» «alt» «altGrp» «anchor» «join» «joinGrp» «link» «linkGrp» «seg» «timeline»

*Declaration*

```

element quote
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  macro.specialPara}

```

*Example* Lexicography has shown little sign of being affected by the work of followers of J.R. Firth, probably best summarized in his slogan, `<quote xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns458="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">You shall know a word by the company it keeps</quote>` `<ref>(Firth, 1957)</ref>`

*Note* If a bibliographic citation is supplied for the source of a quotation, the two may be grouped using the <cit> element.

**<ref>** (reference) defines a reference to another location, possibly modified by additional text or comment.

*Module* core

*Used by* «model.ptrLike»

*May contain*

**analysis:** «S» «ana» «c» «m» «pc» «phr» «s» «span» «tok» «w»

**core:** «abbr» «add» «address» «bibl» «biblStruct» «binaryObject» «cb» «choice» «cit» «corr» «date» «del» «desc» «distinct» «email» «emph» «expan» «foreign» «gap» «gloss» «graphic» «hi» «label» «lb» «list» «listBibl» «measure» «measureGrp» «mentioned» «milestone» «name» «note» «num» «orig» «pb» «ptr» «q» «quote» «ref» «reg» «rs» «said» «sic» «soCalled» «stage» «term» «time» «title» «unclear»

**figures:** «figure» «formula» «table»

**header:** «biblFull»

**iso-fs:** «fLib» «fs» «fvLib»

**linking:** «alt» «altGrp» «anchor» «join» «joinGrp» «link» «linkGrp» «seg» «timeline»

*Declaration*

```

element ref
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.pointing.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  (
    attribute target { list { xsd:anyURI+ } }?
    | attribute cRef
      {
        list { token { pattern = "(\\p{L}|\\p{N}|\\p{P}|\\p{S})+" }+ }
      }?
  ),
  macro.paraContent}

```

*Example* <ref

```

  target="http://www.natcorp.ox.ac.uk/Texts/A02.xml#s2"
xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"
xmlns:ns460="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0"> See especially the second
sentence</ref> See also <ref>s.v. <term>locution</term>
</ref>.

```

*Note* The **target** and **cRef** attributes are mutually exclusive.

**<refState/>** (reference state) specifies one component of a canonical reference defined by the milestone method.

*Module* header

*Used by* «refsDecl»

*May contain* Empty element

*Declaration*

```

element refState
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.sourced.attributes,
  attribute unit
  {
    "page"
  | "column"
  | "line"
  | "book"
  | "poem"
  | "canto"
  | "stanza"
  | "act"
  | "scene"
  | "section"
  | "absent"
  | xsd:Name
  },
  attribute length { xsd:nonNegativeInteger }?,
  attribute delim { text }?,
  empty
}

```

*Example* `<refState unit="book" delim=":"  
xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"  
xmlns:ns463="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0"/>  
<refState unit="line" length="4"/>`

**<refsDecl>** (references declaration) specifies how canonical references are constructed for this text.

*Module header*

*Used by* «model.encodingDescPart»

*May contain*

core: «p»

header: «cRefPattern» «refState»

linking: «ab»

*Declaration*

```

element refsDecl
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  ( model.pLike+ | cRefPattern+ | refState+ )
}

```

*Example* `<refsDecl xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"  
xmlns:ns466="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">  
<cRefPattern  
 matchPattern="([A-Za-z0-9]+) ([0-9]+) : ([0-9]+) "  
 replacementPattern="#xpath(//body/div[@n=' $1' ]/div[$2]/div3[$3])"/>  
</refsDecl>`

This example is a formal representation for the referencing scheme described informally in the following example.

```
Example <refsDecl xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"
xmlns:ns466="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <p>References are made up by concatenating the value for the
  <att>n</att> attribute on the highest level <gi>div</gi>
  element, followed by a space, followed by the sequential
  number of the next level <gi>div</gi> followed by a colon
  followed by the sequential number of the next (and lowest)
  level <gi>div</gi>.</p>
</refsDecl>
```

**<reg>** (regularization) contains a reading which has been regularized or normalized in some sense.

*Module* core

*Used by* «model.pPart.transcriptional» «model.choicePart»

*May contain*

**analysis:** «S» «ana» «c» «m» «pc» «phr» «s» «span» «tok» «w»

**core:** «abbr» «add» «address» «bibl» «biblStruct» «binaryObject» «cb» «choice» «cit»  
 «corr» «date» «del» «desc» «distinct» «email» «emph» «expan» «foreign» «gap»  
 «gloss» «graphic» «hi» «label» «lb» «list» «listBibl» «measure» «measureGrp»  
 «mentioned» «milestone» «name» «note» «num» «orig» «pb» «ptr» «q» «quote»  
 «ref» «reg» «rs» «said» «sic» «soCalled» «stage» «term» «time» «title» «unclear»

**figures:** «figure» «formula» «table»

**header:** «biblFull»

**iso-fs:** «fLib» «fs» «fvLib»

**linking:** «alt» «altGrp» «anchor» «join» «joinGrp» «link» «linkGrp» «seg» «timeline»

*Declaration*

```
element reg
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}

```

*Example* If all that is desired is to call attention to the fact that the copy text has been regularized, **<reg>** may be used alone:

```
<q xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"
xmlns:ns468="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">Please <reg>knock</reg> if an
<reg>answer</reg> is <reg>required</reg>
</q>
```

*Example* It is also possible to identify the individual responsible for the regularization, and, using the **<choice>** and **<orig>** elements, to provide both the original and regularized readings:

```
<q xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"
xmlns:ns468="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">Please <choice>
  <reg resp="#LB">knock</reg>
  <orig>cnk</orig>
</choice> if an <choice>
  <reg>answer</reg>
  <orig>nsr</orig>
</choice> is <choice>
```

```

<reg>required</reg>
<orig>reqd</orig>
</choice>
</q>

```

**<relatedItem>** contains or references some other bibliographic item which is related to the present one in some specified manner, for example as a constituent or alternative version of it.

*Module* core

*Used by* «biblStruct»«model.biblPart»

*May contain*

core: «bibl» «biblStruct» «ptr» «ref»

header: «biblFull»

*Declaration*

```

element relatedItem
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  attribute target { xsd:anyURI }?,
  ( model.biblLike | model.ptrLike )
}

```

<report xmlns="http://purl.oclc.org/dsdl/schematron" test="@target and string-length(text())>0">If the target attribute is used, the element must be empty</report>

*Example*

```

<biblStruct xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"
xmlns:ns470="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <monogr>
    <author>Shirley, James</author>
    <title type="main">The gentlemen of Venice</title>
    <imprint>
      <pubPlace>New York</pubPlace>
      <publisher>Readex Microprint</publisher>
      <date>1953</date>
    </imprint>
    <extent>1 microprint card, 23 x 15 cm.</extent>
  </monogr>
  <series>
    <title>Three centuries of drama: English, 1642-1700</title>
  </series>
  <relatedItem type="otherForm">
    <biblStruct>
      <monogr>
        <author>Shirley, James</author>
        <title type="main">The gentlemen of Venice</title>
        <title type="subordinate">a tragi-comedie presented at the private
house in Salisbury
          Court by Her Majesties servants</title>
        <imprint>
          <pubPlace>London</pubPlace>
          <publisher>H. Moseley</publisher>
          <date>1655</date>
        </imprint>
        <extent>78 p.</extent>
      </monogr>
    </biblStruct>
  </relatedItem>
</biblStruct>

```

```

</monogr>
</biblStruct>
</relatedItem>
</biblStruct>

```

*Note* If the **target** attribute is used to reference the related bibliographic item, this element will generally be empty.

**<rendition>** supplies information about the rendition or appearance of one or more elements in the source text.

*Module* header

*Used by* «tagsDecl»

*May contain*

**core:** «abbr» «address» «bibl» «biblStruct» «choice» «cit» «date» «desc» «distinct» «email» «emph» «expan» «foreign» «gloss» «label» «list» «listBibl» «measure» «measureGrp» «mentioned» «name» «num» «ptr» «q» «quote» «ref» «rs» «said» «soCalled» «stage» «term» «time» «title»

**figures:** «table»

**header:** «biblFull»

*Declaration*

```

element rendition
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute scheme { "css" | "xslfo" | "free" | "other" }?,
  attribute scope { text }?,
  macro.limitedContent
}

```

*Example* <tagsDecl xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns473="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">  
 <rendition xml:id="r-center" scheme="css">text-align:center;</rendition>  
 <rendition xml:id="r-small" scheme="css">font-size: small;</rendition>  
 <rendition xml:id="r-large" scheme="css">font-size: large;</rendition>  
 <rendition xml:id="initcaps" scope="first-letter" scheme="css">font-size: xx-large</rendition>  
 </tagsDecl>

*Note* The present release of these Guidelines does not specify the content of this element in any further detail. It may be used to hold a description of the default rendition to be associated with the specified element, expressed in running prose, or in some more formal language such as CSS.

**<resp>** (responsibility) contains a phrase describing the nature of a person's intellectual responsibility.

*Module* core

*Used by* «respStmt»

*May contain*

**analysis:** «span»



core: «abbr» «address» «cb» «choice» «date» «distinct» «email» «emph» «expan»  
 «foreign» «gap» «gloss» «lb» «measure» «measureGrp» «mentioned» «milestone»  
 «name» «note» «num» «pb» «ptr» «ref» «rs» «soCalled» «term» «time» «title»  
 figures: «figure»  
 iso-fs: «fLib» «fs» «fvLib»  
 linking: «alt» «altGrp» «anchor» «join» «joinGrp» «link» «linkGrp» «timeline»

*Declaration*

```

element resp
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.canonical.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq.limited}

```

*Example* `<respStmt xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns475="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">  
 <resp key="com">compiler</resp>  
 <name>Edward Child</name>  
</respStmt>`

*Note* The attributes **key** or **ref**, inherited from the class `att.canonical` may be used to indicate the kind of responsibility in a normalised form, by referring directly (using **ref**) or indirectly (using **key**) to a standardised list of responsibility types, such as that maintained by a naming authority, for example the list maintained at <http://www.loc.gov/marc/relators/relacode.html> for bibliographic usage.

**<respStmt>** (statement of responsibility) supplies a statement of responsibility for the intellectual content of a text, edition, recording, or series, where the specialized elements for authors, editors, etc. do not suffice or do not apply.

*Module* core

*Used by* «analytic» «editionStmt» «monogr» «series» «seriesStmt» «model.respLike»

*May contain*

core: «name» «resp»

*Declaration*

```

element respStmt
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( ( resp+, model.nameLike.agent+ ) | ( model.nameLike.agent+, resp+ ) )
}

```

*Example* `<respStmt xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns477="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">  
 <resp>transcribed from original ms</resp>  
 <persName>Claus Huitfeldt</persName>  
</respStmt>`

*Example* `<respStmt xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns477="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">  
 <resp>converted to SGML encoding</resp>`

```
<name>Alan Morrison</name>
</respStmt>
```

**<revisionDesc>** (revision description) summarizes the revision history for a file.

*Module* header

*Used by* «teiHeader»

*May contain*

core: «list»

header: «change»

*Declaration*

```
element revisionDesc { att.global.attributes, ( list | change+ ) }
```

```
Example <revisionDesc xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"
xmlns:ns478="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <change when="1991-11-11"> EMB deleted chapter 10 </change>
</revisionDesc>
```

*Note* Record changes with most recent changes at the top of the list.

---

**<row>** contains one row of a table.

*Module* figures

*Used by* «table»

*May contain*

figures: «cell»

*Declaration*

```
element row { att.global.attributes, att.tableDecoration.attributes, cell+ }
```

```
Example <row role="data" xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"
xmlns:ns479="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <cell role="label">Classics</cell>
  <cell>Idle listless and unimproving</cell>
</row>
```

**<rs>** (referencing string) contains a general purpose name or referring string.

*Module* core

*Used by* «model.nameLike»

*May contain*

analysis: «S» «ana» «c» «m» «pc» «phr» «s» «span» «tok» «w»

core: «abbr» «add» «address» «binaryObject» «cb» «choice» «corr» «date» «del»  
«distinct» «email» «emph» «expan» «foreign» «gap» «gloss» «graphic» «hi» «lb»  
«measure» «measureGrp» «mentioned» «milestone» «name» «note» «num» «orig»  
«pb» «ptr» «ref» «reg» «rs» «sic» «soCalled» «term» «time» «title» «unclear»

figures: «figure» «formula»

iso-fs: «fLib» «fs» «fvLib»

linking: «alt» «altGrp» «anchor» «join» «joinGrp» «link» «linkGrp» «seg» «timeline»

#### Declaration

```

element rs
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  attribute type { xsd:Name }?,
  macro.phraseSeq
}

```

*Example* `<q xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns481="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">My dear <rs type="person">Mr. Bennet</rs>, </q> said <rs type="person">his lady</rs> to him one day, <q>have you heard that <rs type="place">Netherfield Park</rs> is let at last?</q>`

**<S>** (s-unit) mte: sentences can also contain quoted speech and similar.

#### Module analysis

Used by «model.segLike»

#### May contain

analysis: «S» «ana» «c» «m» «pc» «phr» «s» «span» «tok» «w»

core: «abbr» «add» «address» «binaryObject» «cb» «choice» «corr» «date» «del» «distinct» «email» «emph» «expan» «foreign» «gap» «gloss» «graphic» «hi» «lb» «measure» «measureGrp» «mentioned» «milestone» «name» «note» «num» «orig» «pb» «ptr» «q» «ref» «reg» «rs» «sic» «soCalled» «term» «time» «title» «unclear»

figures: «figure» «formula»

iso-fs: «fLib» «fs» «fvLib»

linking: «alt» «altGrp» «anchor» «join» «joinGrp» «link» «linkGrp» «seg» «timeline»

#### Declaration

```

element s
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.segLike.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  ( text | model.gLike | model.phrase | model.global | q ) *
}

```

*Example* `<head xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns488="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0"> <s>A short affair</s> </head> <s>When are you leaving?</s> <s>Tomorrow.</s>`

*Note* The `<s>` element may be used to mark orthographic sentences, or any other segmentation of a text, provided that the segmentation is end-to-end, complete, and non-nesting. For segmentation which is partial or recursive, the `<seg>` should be used instead. The **type** attribute may be used to indicate the type of segmentation intended, according to any convenient typology.

**<said>** (speech or thought) indicates passages thought or spoken aloud, whether explicitly indicated in the source or not, whether directly or indirectly reported, whether by real people or fictional characters.

*Module* core

*Used by* «model.qLike»

*May contain*

**analysis:** «S» «ana» «c» «m» «pc» «phr» «s» «span» «tok» «w»

**core:** «abbr» «add» «address» «bibl» «biblStruct» «binaryObject» «cb» «choice» «cit» «corr» «date» «del» «desc» «distinct» «email» «emph» «expan» «foreign» «gap» «gloss» «graphic» «hi» «l» «label» «lb» «lg» «list» «listBibl» «measure» «measureGrp» «mentioned» «milestone» «name» «note» «num» «orig» «p» «pb» «ptr» «q» «quote» «ref» «reg» «rs» «said» «sic» «soCalled» «sp» «stage» «term» «time» «title» «unclear»

**figures:** «figure» «formula» «table»

**header:** «biblFull»

**iso-fs:** «fLib» «fs» «fvLib»

**linking:** «ab» «alt» «altGrp» «anchor» «join» «joinGrp» «link» «linkGrp» «seg» «timeline»

*Declaration*

```

element said
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.ascribed.attributes,
  attribute aloud { xsd:boolean | "unknown" | "inapplicable" }?,
  attribute direct { xsd:boolean | "unknown" | "inapplicable" }?,
  macro.specialPara}

```

*Example* `<p xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns490="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">  
<said>Our minstrel here will warm the old man's heart with song, dazzle him with jewels and  
gold</said>, a troublemaker simpered. <said>He'll trample on the Duke's camellias, spill  
his wine, and blunt his sword, and say his name begins with X, and in the end the Duke  
will say, <said>Take Saralinda, with my blessing, O lordly Prince of Rags and Tags, O  
rider of the sun!</said>  
</said>  
</p>`

*Example* `<p xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns490="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">  
<said aloud="true" rend="pre(") post(")">Hmmm</said>, said a small voice in his ear. <said aloud="true" rend="pre(") post(")">Difficult. Very difficult. Plenty of courage, I see.  
Not a bad mind either. there's talent, oh my goodness, yes -- and a nice thirst to prove  
yourself, now that's interesting. ... So where shall I put you?</said>  
</p>`

```
<p>Harry gripped the edges of the stool and thought,
<said aloud="false" rend="italic">Not
  Slytherin, not Slytherin</said>.</p>
```

**<salute>** (salutation) contains a salutation or greeting prefixed to a foreword, dedicatory epistle, or other division of a text, or the salutation in the closing of a letter, preface, etc.

*Module* textstructure

*Used by* «closer» «opener»«model.divWrapper»

*May contain*

**analysis:** «S» «ana» «c» «m» «pc» «phr» «s» «span» «tok» «w»

**core:** «abbr» «add» «address» «binaryObject» «cb» «choice» «corr» «date» «del»  
«distinct» «email» «emph» «expan» «foreign» «gap» «gloss» «graphic» «hi» «lb»  
«measure» «measureGrp» «mentioned» «milestone» «name» «note» «num» «orig»  
«pb» «ptr» «ref» «reg» «rs» «sic» «soCalled» «term» «time» «title» «unclear»

**figures:** «figure» «formula»

**iso-fs:** «fLib» «fs» «fvLib»

**linking:** «alt» «altGrp» «anchor» «join» «joinGrp» «link» «linkGrp» «seg» «timeline»

*Declaration*

```
element salute { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```

*Example* `<salute xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns493="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">To all courteous mindes, that will voutchsafte the readinge.</salute>`

**<samplingDecl>** (sampling declaration) contains a prose description of the rationale and methods used in sampling texts in the creation of a corpus or collection.

*Module* header

*Used by* «model.encodingDescPart»

*May contain*

**core:** «p»

**linking:** «ab»

*Declaration*

```
element samplingDecl
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  model.pLike+
}
```

*Example* `<samplingDecl xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns494="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
 <p>Samples of up to 2000 words taken at random from the beginning, middle, or end of each text identified as relevant by respondents.</p>
</samplingDecl>`

*Note* This element records all information about systematic inclusion or omission of portions of the text, whether a reflection of sampling procedures in the pure sense or of systematic omission of material deemed either too difficult to transcribe or not of sufficient interest.

**<seg>** (arbitrary segment) represents any segmentation of text below the ‘chunk’ level.

*Module linking*

*Used by* <m> <tok> <w><model.segLike> <model.choicePart>

*May contain*

**analysis:** <S> <ana> <c> <m> <pc> <phr> <s> <span> <tok> <w>

**core:** <abbr> <add> <address> <bibl> <biblStruct> <binaryObject> <cb> <choice> <cit> <corr> <date> <del> <desc> <distinct> <email> <emph> <expan> <foreign> <gap> <gloss> <graphic> <hi> <label> <lb> <list> <listBibl> <measure> <measureGrp> <mentioned> <milestone> <name> <note> <num> <orig> <pb> <ptr> <q> <quote> <ref> <reg> <rs> <said> <sic> <soCalled> <stage> <term> <time> <title> <unclear>

**figures:** <figure> <formula> <table>

**header:** <biblFull>

**iso-fs:** <fLib> <fs> <fvLib>

**linking:** <alt> <altGrp> <anchor> <join> <joinGrp> <link> <linkGrp> <seg> <timeline>

*Declaration*

```
element seg
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.segLike.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}

```

*Example* <seg xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns496="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">When are you leaving?</seg>  
<seg>Tomorrow.</seg>

*Example* <s xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns496="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">  
<seg rend="caps" type="initial-cap">So father's only</seg> glory was the  
ballfield.  
</s>

*Example* <seg type="preamble" xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns496="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">  
<seg>Sigmund, <seg type="patronym">the son of Volsung</seg>, was a king  
in Frankish country.</seg>  
<seg>Sinfiotli was the eldest of his sons ...</seg>  
<seg>Borghild, Sigmund's wife, had a brother ... </seg>  
</seg>

*Note* The <seg> element may be used at the encoder's discretion to mark any segments of the text of interest for processing. One use of the element is to mark text features for which no appropriate markup is otherwise defined. Another use is to provide an identifier for some segment which is to be pointed at by some other element — i.e. to provide a target, or a part of a target, for a <ptr> or other similar element.

**<segmentation>** describes the principles according to which the text has been segmented, for example into sentences, tone-units, graphemic strata, etc.

*Module header*

*Used by* «model.editorialDeclPart»

*May contain*

core: «p»

linking: «ab»

*Declaration*

```

element segmentation
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  model.pLike+
}

```

*Example* `<segmentation xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns498="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">  
<p>  
<gi>s</gi> elements mark orthographic sentences and are numbered sequentially within their parent <gi>div</gi> element </p>  
</segmentation>`

*Example* `<p xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns498="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">  
<gi>seg</gi> elements are used to mark functional constituents of various types within each <gi>s</gi>; the typology used is defined by a <gi>taxonomy</gi> element in the corpus header <gi>classDecl</gi>  
</p>`

**<series>** (series information) contains information about the series in which a book or other bibliographic item has appeared.

*Module core*

*Used by* «biblStruct»«model.biblPart»

*May contain*

analysis: «span»

core: «biblScope» «cb» «editor» «gap» «lb» «milestone» «note» «pb» «respStmt» «title»

figures: «figure»

iso-fs: «fLib» «fs» «fvLib»

linking: «alt» «altGrp» «anchor» «join» «joinGrp» «link» «linkGrp» «timeline»

*Declaration*

```

element series
{
  att.global.attributes,
  (
    text
  )
}

```

## 5 ELEMENTS

---

```
    | model.gLike    | title    | editor    | respStmt  | biblScope | model.
```

```
Example <series xml:lang="de" xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"
xmlns:ns500="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <title level="s">Halbgraue Reihe zur Historischen Fachinformatik</title>
  <respStmt>
    <resp>Herausgegeben von</resp>
    <name type="person">Manfred Thaller</name>
    <name type="org">Max-Planck-Institut für Geschichte</name>
  </respStmt>
  <title level="s">Serie A: Historische Quellenkunden</title>
  <biblScope>Band 11</biblScope>
</series>
```

---

**<seriesStmt>** (series statement) groups information about the series, if any, to which a publication belongs.

*Module header*

*Used by* «biblFull» «fileDesc»

*May contain*

core: «p» «respStmt» «title»  
header: «idno»  
linking: «ab»

*Declaration*

```
element seriesStmt
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( model.pLike+ | ( title+, ( idno | respStmt )* ) )
}
```

```
Example <seriesStmt xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"
xmlns:ns501="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <title>Machine-Readable Texts for the Study of Indian Literature</title>
  <respStmt>
    <resp>ed. by</resp>
    <name>Jan Gonda</name>
  </respStmt>
  <idno type="vol">1.2</idno>
  <idno type="ISSN">0 345 6789</idno>
</seriesStmt>
```

---

**<sic>** (latin for thus or so) contains text reproduced although apparently incorrect or inaccurate.

*Module core*

*Used by* «model.pPart.transcriptional» «model.choicePart»

*May contain*

analysis: «S» «ana» «c» «m» «pc» «phr» «s» «span» «tok» «w»  
core: «abbr» «add» «address» «bibl» «biblStruct» «binaryObject» «cb» «choice» «cit»  
«corr» «date» «del» «desc» «distinct» «email» «emph» «expan» «foreign» «gap»  
«gloss» «graphic» «hi» «label» «lb» «list» «listBibl» «measure» «measureGrp»



«mentioned» «milestone» «name» «note» «num» «orig» «pb» «ptr» «q» «quote»  
 «ref» «reg» «rs» «said» «sic» «soCalled» «stage» «term» «time» «title» «unclear»  
 figures: «figure» «formula» «table»  
 header: «biblFull»  
 iso-fs: «fLib» «fs» «fvLib»  
 linking: «alt» «altGrp» «anchor» «join» «joinGrp» «link» «linkGrp» «seg» «timeline»

#### Declaration

```
element sic { att.global.attributes, macro.paraContent }
```

*Example* for his nose was as sharp as  
 a pen, and **<sic xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"  
 xmlns:ns502="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">a Table</sic>** of green fields.

*Example* If all that is desired is to call attention to the apparent problem in the copy text, **<sic>** may be used alone:

```
I don't know, Juan. It's so far in the past now
-- how <sic xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"  

xmlns:ns502="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">we can</sic> prove or disprove  

anyone's theories?
```

*Example* It is also possible, using the **<choice>** and **<corr>** elements, to provide a corrected reading:

```
I don't know, Juan. It's so far in the past now
-- how <choice xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"  

xmlns:ns502="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">  

<sic>we can</sic>  

<corr>can we</corr>  

</choice> prove or disprove anyone's theories?
```

*Example* for his nose was as sharp as  
 a pen, and **<choice xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"  
 xmlns:ns502="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">**  
**<sic>a Table</sic>**  
**<corr>a' babbld</corr>**  
**</choice>** of green fields.

**<signed>** (signature) contains the closing salutation, etc., appended to a foreword, dedicatory epistle, or other division of a text.

*Module* textstructure

*Used by* «closer» «opener» «model.divBottomPart»

*May contain*

analysis: «S» «ana» «c» «m» «pc» «phr» «s» «span» «tok» «w»  
 core: «abbr» «add» «address» «binaryObject» «cb» «choice» «corr» «date» «del»  
 «distinct» «email» «emph» «expan» «foreign» «gap» «gloss» «graphic» «hi» «lb»  
 «measure» «measureGrp» «mentioned» «milestone» «name» «note» «num» «orig»  
 «pb» «ptr» «ref» «reg» «rs» «sic» «soCalled» «term» «time» «title» «unclear»  
 figures: «figure» «formula»  
 iso-fs: «fLib» «fs» «fvLib»  
 linking: «alt» «altGrp» «anchor» «join» «joinGrp» «link» «linkGrp» «seg» «timeline»

#### Declaration

```
element signed { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```

*Example* `<signed xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns503="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">Thine to command <name>Humph. Moseley</name></signed>`

**<soCalled>** contains a word or phrase for which the author or narrator indicates a disclaiming of responsibility, for example by the use of scare quotes or italics.

*Module* core

*Used by* «model.emphLike»

*May contain*

**analysis:** «S» «ana» «c» «m» «pc» «phr» «s» «span» «tok» «w»

**core:** «abbr» «add» «address» «binaryObject» «cb» «choice» «corr» «date» «del» «distinct» «email» «emph» «expan» «foreign» «gap» «gloss» «graphic» «hi» «lb» «measure» «measureGrp» «mentioned» «milestone» «name» «note» «num» «orig» «pb» «ptr» «ref» «reg» «rs» «sic» «soCalled» «term» «time» «title» «unclear»

**figures:** «figure» «formula»

**iso-fs:** «fLib» «fs» «fvLib»

**linking:** «alt» «altGrp» «anchor» «join» «joinGrp» «link» «linkGrp» «seg» «timeline»

*Declaration*

```
element soCalled { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```

*Example* To edge his way along  
the crowded paths of life, warning all human sympathy to keep its distance,  
was what the  
knowing ones call **<soCalled** xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"  
xmlns:ns504="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">nuts</soCalled> to Scrooge.

**<sourceDesc>** (source description) describes the source from which an electronic text was derived or generated, typically a bibliographic description in the case of a digitized text, or a phrase such as "born digital" for a text which has no previous existence.

*Module* header

*Used by* «biblFull» «fileDesc»

*May contain*

**core:** «bibl» «biblStruct» «list» «listBibl» «p»

**header:** «biblFull»

**linking:** «ab»

*Declaration*

```
element sourceDesc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  (
    model.pLike+
```

```

    | ( model.biblLike | model.sourceDescPart | model.listLike )+
  )
}

```

*Example* `<sourceDesc xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns505="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">`  
`<bibl>`  
`<title level="a">The Interesting story of the Children in the`  
`Wood</title>. In`  
`<author>Victor E Neuberg</author>, <title>The Penny Histories</title>.`  
`<publisher>OUP</publisher>`  
`<date>1968</date>. </bibl>`  
`</sourceDesc>`

*Example* `<sourceDesc xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns505="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">`  
`<p>Born digital: no previous source exists.</p>`  
`</sourceDesc>`

**<sp>** (speech) An individual speech in a performance text, or a passage presented as such in a prose or verse text.

*Module core*

*Used by* «model.divPart»

*May contain*

**analysis:** «span»

**core:** «cb» «cit» «gap» «l» «lb» «lg» «milestone» «note» «p» «pb» «q» «quote»  
 «said» «speaker» «stage»

**figures:** «figure»

**iso-fs:** «fLib» «fs» «fvLib»

**linking:** «ab» «alt» «altGrp» «anchor» «join» «joinGrp» «link» «linkGrp» «timeline»

*Declaration*

```

element sp
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.ascribed.attributes,
  (
    model.global*,
    ( speaker, model.global* )?,
    (
      ( model.lLike | lg | model.pLike | model.stageLike | model.qLike ),
      model.global*
    )+
  )
}

```

*Example* `<sp xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns507="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">`  
`<speaker>The reverend Doctor Opimiam</speaker>`  
`<p>I do not think I have named a single unpresentable fish.</p>`  
`</sp>`  
`<sp>`  
`<speaker>Mr Gryll</speaker>`

```

<p>Bream, Doctor:  there is not much to be said for bream.</p>
</sp>
<sp>
  <speaker>The Reverend Doctor Opimiam</speaker>
  <p>On the contrary, sir, I think there is much to be said for him.  In
the first place....</p>
  <p>Fish, Miss Gryll -- I could discourse to you on fish by the hour:  but
for the present I
    will forbear...</p>
</sp>

```

*Note* The **who** attribute on this element may be used either in addition to the `<speaker>` element or as an alternative.

*Note* Lines or paragraphs, stage directions, and phrase-level elements. The **who** attribute on this element may be used either in addition to the `<speaker>` element or as an alternative.

**<span>** associates an interpretative annotation directly with a span of text.

*Module* analysis

*Used by* «model.global.meta»

*May contain*

analysis: «span»

core: «abbr» «address» «cb» «choice» «date» «distinct» «email» «emph» «expan»  
 «foreign» «gap» «gloss» «lb» «measure» «measureGrp» «mentioned» «milestone»  
 «name» «note» «num» «pb» «ptr» «ref» «rs» «soCalled» «term» «time» «title»

figures: «figure»

iso-fs: «fLib» «fs» «fvLib»

linking: «alt» «altGrp» «anchor» «join» «joinGrp» «link» «linkGrp» «timeline»

*Declaration*

```

element span
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.interpLike.attributes,
  attribute from { xsd:anyURI },
  attribute to { xsd:anyURI }?,
  macro.phraseSeq.limited}

```

*Example* `<p xml:id="para2" xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns509="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">(The "aftermath" starts here)</p>`  
`<p xml:id="para3">(The "aftermath" continues here)</p>`  
`<p xml:id="para4">(The "aftermath" ends in this paragraph)</p>`  
`<!-- ... -->`  
`<span type="structure" from="#para2" to="#para4">aftermath</span>`

**<speaker>** A specialized form of heading or label, giving the name of one or more speakers in a dramatic text or fragment.

*Module* core

*Used by* «sp»

*May contain*

analysis: «S» «ana» «c» «m» «pc» «phr» «s» «span» «tok» «w»

core: «abbr» «add» «address» «binaryObject» «cb» «choice» «corr» «date» «del»  
 «distinct» «email» «emph» «expan» «foreign» «gap» «gloss» «graphic» «hi» «lb»  
 «measure» «measureGrp» «mentioned» «milestone» «name» «note» «num» «orig»  
 «pb» «ptr» «ref» «reg» «rs» «sic» «soCalled» «term» «time» «title» «unclear»  
 figures: «figure» «formula»  
 iso-fs: «fLib» «fs» «fvLib»  
 linking: «alt» «altGrp» «anchor» «join» «joinGrp» «link» «linkGrp» «seg» «timeline»

*Declaration*

```
element speaker { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```

```
Example <sp who="#ni #rsa" xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"
xmlns:ns513="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <speaker>Nancy and Robert</speaker>
  <stage type="delivery">(speaking simultaneously)</stage>
  <p>The future? ...</p>
</sp>
<list type="speakers">
  <item xml:id="ni"/>
  <item xml:id="rsa"/>
</list>
```

**<sponsor>** specifies the name of a sponsoring organization or institution.

*Module header*

*Used by* «model.respLike»

*May contain*

analysis: «span»  
 core: «abbr» «address» «cb» «choice» «date» «distinct» «email» «emph» «expan»  
 «foreign» «gap» «gloss» «lb» «measure» «measureGrp» «mentioned» «milestone»  
 «name» «note» «num» «pb» «ptr» «ref» «rs» «soCalled» «term» «time» «title»  
 figures: «figure»  
 iso-fs: «fLib» «fs» «fvLib»  
 linking: «alt» «altGrp» «anchor» «join» «joinGrp» «link» «linkGrp» «timeline»

*Declaration*

```
element sponsor { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq.limited }
```

```
Example <sponsor xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"
xmlns:ns514="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">Association for Computers and the
Humanities</sponsor>
<sponsor>Association for Computational Linguistics</sponsor>
<sponsor>Association for Literary and Linguistic Computing</sponsor>
```

*Note* Sponsors give their intellectual authority to a project; they are to be distinguished from *funders*, who provide the funding but do not necessarily take intellectual responsibility.

**<stage>** (stage direction) contains any kind of stage direction within a dramatic text or fragment.

*Module core*

*Used by* «model.stageLike»

May contain

analysis: «S» «ana» «c» «m» «pc» «phr» «s» «span» «tok» «w»  
 core: «abbr» «add» «address» «bibl» «biblStruct» «binaryObject» «cb» «choice» «cit»  
 «corr» «date» «del» «desc» «distinct» «email» «emph» «expan» «foreign» «gap»  
 «gloss» «graphic» «hi» «l» «label» «lb» «lg» «list» «listBibl» «measure»  
 «measureGrp» «mentioned» «milestone» «name» «note» «num» «orig» «p» «pb»  
 «ptr» «q» «quote» «ref» «reg» «rs» «said» «sic» «soCalled» «sp» «stage» «term»  
 «time» «title» «unclear»  
 figures: «figure» «formula» «table»  
 header: «biblFull»  
 iso-fs: «fLib» «fs» «fvLib»  
 linking: «ab» «alt» «altGrp» «anchor» «join» «joinGrp» «link» «linkGrp» «seg»  
 «timeline»

Declaration

```

element stage
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute type
  {
    "setting"
    | "entrance"
    | "exit"
    | "business"
    | "novelistic"
    | "delivery"
    | "modifier"
    | "location"
    | "mixed"
    | xsd:Name
  }?,
  macro.specialPara}

```

*Example* `<stage type="setting" xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns515="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">A curtain being drawn.</stage>`  
`<stage type="setting">Music</stage>`  
`<stage type="entrance">Enter Husband as being thrown off his horse.</stage>`  
`<stage type="exit">Exit pursued by a bear.</stage>`  
`<stage type="business">He quickly takes the stone out.</stage>`  
`<stage type="delivery">To Lussurioso.</stage>`  
`<stage type="novelistic">Having had enough, and embarrassed for the family.</stage>`  
`<stage type="modifier">Disguised as Ansaldo.</stage>`  
`<stage type="location">At a window.</stage>`  
`<stage rend="inline" type="delivery">Aside.</stage>`

**<stdVals>** (standard values) specifies the format used when standardized date or number values are supplied.

Module header

Used by «model.editorialDeclPart»

May contain

core: «p»  
 linking: «ab»

#### Declaration

```

element stdVals
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  model.pLike+
}

```

*Example* `<stdVals xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns517="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">  
 <p>All integer numbers are left-filled with zeroes to 8 digits.</p>  
 </stdVals>`

**<street>** a full street address including any name or number identifying a building as well as the name of the street or route on which it is located.

*Module* core

*Used by* «model.addrPart»

*May contain*

analysis: «S» «ana» «c» «m» «pc» «phr» «s» «span» «tok» «w»  
 core: «abbr» «add» «address» «binaryObject» «cb» «choice» «corr» «date» «del»  
 «distinct» «email» «emph» «expan» «foreign» «gap» «gloss» «graphic» «hi» «lb»  
 «measure» «measureGrp» «mentioned» «milestone» «name» «note» «num» «orig»  
 «pb» «ptr» «ref» «reg» «rs» «sic» «soCalled» «term» «time» «title» «unclear»  
 figures: «figure» «formula»  
 iso-fs: «fLib» «fs» «fvLib»  
 linking: «alt» «altGrp» «anchor» «join» «joinGrp» «link» «linkGrp» «seg» «timeline»

*Declaration*

```

element street { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }

```

*Example* `<street xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns519="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">via della Faggiola, 36</street>`

*Example* `<street xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns519="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">  
 <name>Duntaggin</name>, 110 Southmoor Road  
 </street>`

*Note* The order and presentation of house names and numbers and street names, etc., may vary considerably in different countries. The encoding should reflect the order which is appropriate in the country concerned.

**<string>** (string value) represents the value part of a feature-value specification which contains a string.

*Module* iso-fs

*Used by* «model.featureVal.single»

*May contain* Empty element

*Declaration*

```
element string { att.global.attributes, macro.xtext }
```

```
Example <f name="greeting" xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"
xmlns:ns520="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <string>Hello, world!</string>
</f>
```

---

**<symbol/>** (symbolic value) represents the value part of a feature-value specification which contains one of a finite list of symbols.

*Module* iso-fs

*Used by* «model.featureVal.single»

*May contain* Empty element

*Declaration*

```
element symbol
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute value { token { pattern = "(\\p{L}|\\p{N}|\\p{P}|\\p{S})+" } },
  empty
}
```

```
Example <f name="gender" xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"
xmlns:ns521="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <symbol value="feminine"/>
</f>
```

---

**<table>** contains text displayed in tabular form, in rows and columns.

*Module* figures

*Used by* «model.inter»

*May contain*

analysis: «span»

core: «cb» «gap» «head» «lb» «milestone» «note» «pb»

figures: «figure» «row»

iso-fs: «fLib» «fs» «fvLib»

linking: «alt» «altGrp» «anchor» «join» «joinGrp» «link» «linkGrp» «timeline»

*Declaration*

```
element table
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute rows { xsd:nonNegativeInteger }?,
  attribute cols { xsd:nonNegativeInteger }?,
  ( ( model.headLike | model.global )*, ( row, model.global* )+ )
}
```



*Example* `<table rows="4" cols="4" xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns523="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">`  
`<head>Poor Men's Lodgings in Norfolk (Mayhew, 1843)</head>`  
`<row role="label">`  
`<cell role="data"/>`  
`<cell role="data">Dossing Cribs or Lodging Houses</cell>`  
`<cell role="data">Beds</cell>`  
`<cell role="data">Needys or Nightly Lodgers</cell>`  
`</row>`  
`<row role="data">`  
`<cell role="label">Bury St Edmund's</cell>`  
`<cell role="data">5</cell>`  
`<cell role="data">8</cell>`  
`<cell role="data">128</cell>`  
`</row>`  
`<row role="data">`  
`<cell role="label">Thetford</cell>`  
`<cell role="data">3</cell>`  
`<cell role="data">6</cell>`  
`<cell role="data">36</cell>`  
`</row>`  
`<row role="data">`  
`<cell role="label">Attleboro' </cell>`  
`<cell role="data">3</cell>`  
`<cell role="data">5</cell>`  
`<cell role="data">20</cell>`  
`</row>`  
`<row role="data">`  
`<cell role="label">Wymondham</cell>`  
`<cell role="data">1</cell>`  
`<cell role="data">11</cell>`  
`<cell role="data">22</cell>`  
`</row>`  
`</table>`

*Note* Contains an optional heading and a series of rows. Any rendition information should be supplied using the global **rend** attribute, at the table, row, or cell level as appropriate.

**<tagUsage>** supplies information about the usage of a specific element within a text.

*Module header*

*Used by* «namespace»

*May contain*

**core:** «abbr» «address» «bibl» «biblStruct» «choice» «cit» «date» «desc» «distinct»  
 «email» «emph» «expan» «foreign» «gloss» «label» «list» «listBibl» «measure»  
 «measureGrp» «mentioned» «name» «num» «ptr» «q» «quote» «ref» «rs» «said»  
 «soCalled» «stage» «term» «time» «title»

**figures:** «table»

**header:** «biblFull»

*Declaration*

```

element tagUsage
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute gi { xsd:Name },

```

```

attribute occurs { xsd:nonNegativeInteger }?,
attribute withId { xsd:nonNegativeInteger }?,
attribute render { xsd:anyURI }?,
macro.limitedContent

```

*Example* `<tagsDecl xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns525="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">`  
`<rendition xml:id="it">Render using a slant or italic variant on the current font</rendition>`  
`<!-- ... -->`  
`<namespace name="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">`  
`<tagUsage`  
`gi="hi"`  
`occurs="28"`  
`withId="2"`  
`render="#it"> Used to mark English words italicised in the copy text.</tagUsage>`  
`<tagUsage gi="foreign" render="#it">Used to mark non-English words in the copy text.</tagUsage>`  
`<!-- ... -->`  
`</namespace>`  
`</tagsDecl>`

**<tagsDecl>** (tagging declaration) provides detailed information about the tagging applied to a document.

*Module header*

*Used by* «model.encodingDescPart»

*May contain*

header: «namespace» «rendition»

*Declaration*

```

element tagsDecl { att.global.attributes, ( rendition*, namespace* ) }

```

*Example* `<tagsDecl xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns528="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">`  
`<rendition xml:id="rend-it">to be rendered in italic font</rendition>`  
`<namespace name="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">`  
`<tagUsage gi="hi" occurs="467" render="#rend-it"/>`  
`<tagUsage gi="title" occurs="45" render="#rend-it"/>`  
`</namespace>`  
`<namespace name="http://docbook.org/ns/docbook">`  
`<tagUsage gi="para" occurs="10"/>`  
`</namespace>`  
`</tagsDecl>`

**<taxonomy>** defines a typology used to classify texts either implicitly, by means of a bibliographic citation, or explicitly by a structured taxonomy.

*Module header*

*Used by* «classDecl»

*May contain*

core: «bibl» «biblStruct» «desc» «gloss»

header: «biblFull» «category»

*Declaration*

```

element taxonomy
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( model.glossLike* | category+ | ( ( model.biblLike ), category* ) )
}

```

*Example*

```

<taxonomy xml:id="tax.b" xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"
xmlns:ns529="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <bibl>Brown Corpus</bibl>
  <category xml:id="tax.b.a">
    <catDesc>Press Reportage</catDesc>
    <category xml:id="tax.b.a1">
      <catDesc>Daily</catDesc>
    </category>
    <category xml:id="tax.b.a2">
      <catDesc>Sunday</catDesc>
    </category>
    <category xml:id="tax.b.a3">
      <catDesc>National</catDesc>
    </category>
    <category xml:id="tax.b.a4">
      <catDesc>Provincial</catDesc>
    </category>
    <category xml:id="tax.b.a5">
      <catDesc>Political</catDesc>
    </category>
    <category xml:id="tax.b.a6">
      <catDesc>Sports</catDesc>
    </category>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="tax.b.d">
    <catDesc>Religion</catDesc>
    <category xml:id="tax.b.d1">
      <catDesc>Books</catDesc>
    </category>
    <category xml:id="tax.b.d2">
      <catDesc>Periodicals and tracts</catDesc>
    </category>
  </category>
</taxonomy>

```

**<teiCorpus>** contains the whole of a TEI encoded corpus, comprising a single corpus header and one or more TEI elements, each containing a single text header and a text.

*Module* core

*Used by* «teiCorpus»

*May contain*

core: «teiCorpus»

header: «teiHeader»

textstructure: «TEI»

*Declaration*

```

element teiCorpus
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute version { xsd:decimal }?,
  ( teiHeader, ( TEI | teiCorpus )+ )
}

```

*Example* `<teiCorpus xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns530="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">`  
`<teiHeader>`  
`<!-- header for corpus -->`  
`</teiHeader>`  
`<TEI>`  
`<teiHeader>`  
`<!-- header for first text -->`  
`</teiHeader>`  
`<text>`  
`<!-- content of first text -->`  
`</text>`  
`</TEI>`  
`<TEI>`  
`<teiHeader>`  
`<!-- header for second text -->`  
`</teiHeader>`  
`<text>`  
`<!-- content of second text -->`  
`</text>`  
`</TEI>`  
`<!-- more TEI elements here -->`  
`</teiCorpus>`

*Note* Must contain one TEI header for the corpus, and a series of <TEI> elements, one for each text. This element is mandatory when applicable.

**<teiHeader>** (TEI Header) supplies the descriptive and declarative information making up an electronic title page prefixed to every TEI-conformant text.

*Module* header

*Used by* «TEI» «teiCorpus»

*May contain*

header: «encodingDesc» «fileDesc» «profileDesc» «revisionDesc»

*Declaration*

```

element teiHeader
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute type { xsd:Name }?,
  ( fileDesc, model.teiHeaderPart*, revisionDesc? )
}

```

*Example* `<teiHeader xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns532="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">`  
`<fileDesc>`  
`<titleStmt>`

```

<title>Shakespeare: the first folio (1623) in electronic form</title>
<author>Shakespeare, William (1564-1616)</author>
<respStmt>
  <resp>Originally prepared by</resp>
  <name>Trevor Howard-Hill</name>
</respStmt>
<respStmt>
  <resp>Revised and edited by</resp>
  <name>Christine Avern-Carr</name>
</respStmt>
</titleStmt>
<publicationStmt>
  <distributor>Oxford Text Archive</distributor>
  <address>
    <addrLine>13 Banbury Road, Oxford OX2 6NN, UK</addrLine>
  </address>
  <idno type="OTA">119</idno>
  <availability>
    <p>Freely available on a non-commercial basis.</p>
  </availability>
  <date when="1968">1968</date>
</publicationStmt>
<sourceDesc>
  <bibl>The first folio of Shakespeare, prepared by Charlton Hinman (The
Norton Facsimile,
    1968)</bibl>
</sourceDesc>
</fileDesc>
<encodingDesc>
  <projectDesc>
    <p>Originally prepared for use in the production of a series of
old-spelling
      concordances in 1968, this text was extensively checked and
revised for use during the
      editing of the new Oxford Shakespeare (Wells and Taylor,
1989).</p>
  </projectDesc>
  <editorialDecl>
    <correction>
      <p>Turned letters are silently corrected.</p>
    </correction>
    <normalization>
      <p>Original spelling and typography is retained, except that long s
and ligatured
        forms are not encoded.</p>
    </normalization>
  </editorialDecl>
  <refsDecl xml:id="ASLREF">
    <cRefPattern
      matchPattern="(\\S+) ([^.]+)\\.\\.\\.*"
      replacementPattern="#xpath(//div1[@n=' $1' ]/div2/[@n=' $2' ]//lb[@n=' $3' ])">
      <p>A reference is created by assembling the following, in the
reverse order as that
        listed here: <list>
          <item>the <att>n</att> value of the preceding <gi>lb</gi>
          </item>
          <item>a period</item>

```

```

    <item>the <att>n</att> value of the ancestor <gi>div2</gi>
    </item>
    <item>a space</item>
    <item>the <att>n</att> value of the parent <gi>div1</gi>
    </item>
  </list>
</p>
</cRefPattern>
</refsDecl>
</encodingDesc>
<revisionDesc>
  <list>
    <item>
      <date when="1989-04-12">12 Apr 89</date> Last checked by CAC</item>
    <item>
      <date when="1989-03-01">1 Mar 89</date> LB made new file</item>
    </list>
  </revisionDesc>
</teiHeader>

```

*Note* One of the few elements unconditionally required in any TEI document.

**<term>** contains a single-word, multi-word, or symbolic designation which is regarded as a technical term.

*Module* core

*Used by* «keywords»«model.emphLike»

*May contain*

**analysis:** «S» «ana» «c» «m» «pc» «phr» «s» «span» «tok» «w»

**core:** «abbr» «add» «address» «binaryObject» «cb» «choice» «corr» «date» «del»  
 «distinct» «email» «emph» «expan» «foreign» «gap» «gloss» «graphic» «hi» «lb»  
 «measure» «measureGrp» «mentioned» «milestone» «name» «note» «num» «orig»  
 «pb» «ptr» «ref» «reg» «rs» «sic» «soCalled» «term» «time» «title» «unclear»

**figures:** «figure» «formula»

**iso-fs:** «fLib» «fs» «fvLib»

**linking:** «alt» «altGrp» «anchor» «join» «joinGrp» «link» «linkGrp» «seg» «timeline»

*Declaration*

```

element term
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.canonical.attributes,
  attribute sortKey { token { pattern = "(\\p{L}|\\p{N}|\\p{P}|\\p{S})+" } }?,
  ( attribute target { xsd:anyURI }? | attribute cRef { xsd:anyURI }? ),
  macro.phraseSeq
}

```

*Example* A computational device that infers structure from grammatical strings of words is known as a **<term** xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns534="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">parser</term>, and much of the history of NLP over the last 20 years has been occupied with the design of parsers.

*Example* We may define `<term xml:id="TDPV" rend="sc" xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns534="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">discoursal point of view</term>` as

```
<gloss target="#TDPV">the relationship, expressed
through discourse structure, between the implied author or some other
addresser, and the
fiction.</gloss>
```

*Note* This element is used to supply the form under which an index entry is to be made for the location of a parent `<index>` element. In formal terminological work, there is frequently discussion over whether terms must be atomic or may include multi-word lexical items, symbolic designations, or phraseological units. The `<term>` element may be used to mark any of these. No position is taken on the philosophical issue of what a term can be; the looser definition simply allows the `<term>` element to be used by practitioners of any persuasion. As with other members of the `att.canonical` class, instances of this element occurring in a text may be associated with a canonical definition, either by means of a URI (using the `ref` attribute), or by means of some system-specific code value (using the `key` attribute). Because the mutually exclusive `target` and `cRef` attributes overlap with the function of the `ref` attribute, they are deprecated and may be removed at a subsequent release.

**<text>** contains a single text of any kind, whether unitary or composite, for example a poem or drama, a collection of essays, a novel, a dictionary, or a corpus sample.

*Module* textstructure

*Used by* «TEI» «group»

*May contain*

analysis: «span»

core: «cb» «gap» «lb» «milestone» «note» «pb»

figures: «figure»

iso-fs: «fLib» «fs» «fvLib»

linking: «alt» «altGrp» «anchor» «join» «joinGrp» «link» «linkGrp» «timeline»

textstructure: «back» «body» «front» «group»

*Declaration*

```
element text
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  (
    model.global*,
    ( front, model.global* )?,
    ( body | group ),
    model.global*,
    ( back, model.global* )?
  )
}
```

*Example* `<text xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns537="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">`  
`<front>`

```

<docTitle>
  <titlePart>Autumn Haze</titlePart>
</docTitle>
</front>
<body>
  <l>Is it a dragonfly or a maple leaf</l>
  <l>That settles softly down upon the water?</l>
</body>
</text>

```

*Example* The body of a text may be replaced by a group of nested texts, as in the following schematic:

```

<text xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"
xmlns:ns537="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <front/>
  <group>
    <text>
      <front/>
      <body/>
      <back/>
    </text>
    <text/>
  </group>
</text>

```

*Note* This element should not be used to represent a text which is inserted at an arbitrary point within the structure of another, for example as in an embedded or quoted narrative; the `<floatingText>` is provided for this purpose.

**<textClass>** (text classification) groups information which describes the nature or topic of a text in terms of a standard classification scheme, thesaurus, etc.

*Module header*

*Used by* «model.profileDescPart»

*May contain*

header: «catRef» «classCode» «keywords»

*Declaration*

```

element textClass
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  ( classCode | catRef | keywords ) *
}

```

*Example* `<taxonomy xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns539="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">`  
`<category xml:id="acprose">`  
`<catDesc>Academic prose</catDesc>`  
`</category>`  
`<!-- other categories here -->`  
`</taxonomy>`  
`<!-- ... -->`  
`<textClass>`  
`<catRef target="#acprose"/>`



```

<classCode scheme="http://www.udcc.org">001.9</classCode>
<keywords scheme="http://authorities.loc.gov">
  <list>
    <item>End of the world</item>
    <item>History - philosophy</item>
  </list>
</keywords>
</textClass>

```

**<time>** contains a phrase defining a time of day in any format.

*Module* core

*Used by* «model.dateLike»

*May contain*

**analysis:** «S» «ana» «c» «m» «pc» «phr» «s» «span» «tok» «w»

**core:** «abbr» «add» «address» «binaryObject» «cb» «choice» «corr» «date» «del»  
 «distinct» «email» «emph» «expan» «foreign» «gap» «gloss» «graphic» «hi» «lb»  
 «measure» «measureGrp» «mentioned» «milestone» «name» «note» «num» «orig»  
 «pb» «ptr» «ref» «reg» «rs» «sic» «soCalled» «term» «time» «title» «unclear»

**figures:** «figure» «formula»

**iso-fs:** «fLib» «fs» «fvLib»

**linking:** «alt» «altGrp» «anchor» «join» «joinGrp» «link» «linkGrp» «seg» «timeline»

*Declaration*

```

element time
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.dateable.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  ( text | model.gLike | model.phrase | model.global ) *
}

```

*Example* As he sat smiling, the

```

quarter struck -- <time when="11:45:00"
xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"
xmlns:ns541="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">the quarter to twelve</time>.

```

**<timeline>** (timeline) provides a set of ordered points in time which can be linked to elements of a spoken text to create a temporal alignment of that text.

*Module* linking

*Used by* «model.global.meta»

*May contain*

**linking:** «when»

*Declaration*

```

element timeline
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute origin { xsd:anyURI }?,

```

```

attribute unit { "d" | "h" | "min" | "s" | "ms" | xsd:Name }?,
attribute interval
{
  xsd:float { minExclusive = "0" } | "regular" | "irregular"
}?,
when+
}

```

```

Example <timeline xml:id="TL01" unit="ms"
xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"
xmlns:ns543="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <when xml:id="TL-w0" absolute="11:30:00"/>
  <when xml:id="TL-w1" interval="unknown" since="#TL-w0"/>
  <when xml:id="TL-w2" interval="100" since="#TL-w1"/>
  <when xml:id="TL-w3" interval="200" since="#TL-w2"/>
  <when xml:id="TL-w4" interval="150" since="#TL-w3"/>
  <when xml:id="TL-w5" interval="250" since="#TL-w4"/>
  <when xml:id="TL-w6" interval="100" since="#TL-w5"/>
</timeline>

```

**<title>** contains a title for any kind of work.

*Module* core

*Used by* «analytic» «monogr» «series» «seriesStmt» «titleStmt» «model.emphLike»  
«model.msQuoteLike»

*May contain*

**analysis:** «S» «ana» «c» «m» «pc» «phr» «s» «span» «tok» «w»

**core:** «abbr» «add» «address» «bibl» «biblStruct» «binaryObject» «cb» «choice» «cit»  
«corr» «date» «del» «desc» «distinct» «email» «emph» «expan» «foreign» «gap»  
«gloss» «graphic» «hi» «label» «lb» «list» «listBibl» «measure» «measureGrp»  
«mentioned» «milestone» «name» «note» «num» «orig» «pb» «ptr» «q» «quote»  
«ref» «reg» «rs» «said» «sic» «soCalled» «stage» «term» «time» «title» «unclear»

**figures:** «figure» «formula» «table»

**header:** «biblFull»

**iso-fs:** «fLib» «fs» «fvLib»

**linking:** «alt» «altGrp» «anchor» «join» «joinGrp» «link» «linkGrp» «seg» «timeline»

*Declaration*

```

element title
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.canonical.attributes,
  attribute level { "a" | "m" | "j" | "s" | "u" }?,
  attribute type { xsd:Name }?,
  macro.paraContent
}

```

```

Example <title xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"
xmlns:ns546="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">Information Technology and the
Research Process: Proceedings of
a conference held at Cranfield Institute of Technology, UK,
18-21 July 1989</title>

```

```
Example <title xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"
xmlns:ns546="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">Hardy's Tess of the
D'Urbervilles: a machine readable
edition</title>
```

```
Example <title type="full" xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"
xmlns:ns546="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
<title type="main">Synthèse</title>
<title type="subtitle">an international journal for
epistemology, methodology and history of
science</title>
</title>
```

*Note* The attributes **key** and **ref**, inherited from the class **att.canonical** may be used to indicate the canonical form for the title; the former, by supplying (for example) the identifier of a record in some external library system; the latter by pointing to an XML element somewhere containing the canonical form of the title.

**<titlePage>** (title page) contains the title page of a text, appearing within the front or back matter.

*Module* textstructure

*Used by* «model.frontPart»

*May contain*

analysis: «span»  
 core: «binaryObject» «cb» «gap» «graphic» «lb» «milestone» «note» «pb»  
 figures: «figure»  
 iso-fs: «fLib» «fs» «fvLib»  
 linking: «alt» «altGrp» «anchor» «join» «joinGrp» «link» «linkGrp» «timeline»  
 textstructure: «byline» «docAuthor» «docDate» «docEdition» «docImprint»  
 «docTitle» «epigraph» «titlePart»

*Declaration*

```
element titlePage
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute type { xsd:Name }?,
  (
    model.global*,
    ( model.titlepagePart ),
    ( model.titlepagePart | model.global )*
  )
}
```

```
Example <titlePage xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"
xmlns:ns549="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
<docTitle>
<titlePart type="main">THOMAS OF Reading.</titlePart>
<titlePart type="alt">OR, The sixe worthy yeomen of the
West.</titlePart>
</docTitle>
<docEdition>Now the fourth time corrected and enlarged</docEdition>
<byline>By T.D.</byline>
<figure>
<head>TP</head>
```

```

<p>Thou shalt labor till thou returne to duste</p>
<figDesc>Printers Ornament used by TP</figDesc>
</figure>
<docImprint>Printed at <name type="place">London</name> for
<name>T.P.</name>
<date>1612.</date>
</docImprint>
</titlePage>

```

**<titlePart>** contains a subsection or division of the title of a work, as indicated on a title page.

*Module* textstructure

*Used by* «docTitle» «model.titlepagePart» «model.pLike.front»

*May contain*

**analysis:** «S» «ana» «c» «m» «pc» «phr» «s» «span» «tok» «w»

**core:** «abbr» «add» «address» «bibl» «biblStruct» «binaryObject» «cb» «choice» «cit» «corr» «date» «del» «desc» «distinct» «email» «emph» «expan» «foreign» «gap» «gloss» «graphic» «hi» «label» «lb» «list» «listBibl» «measure» «measureGrp» «mentioned» «milestone» «name» «note» «num» «orig» «pb» «ptr» «q» «quote» «ref» «reg» «rs» «said» «sic» «soCalled» «stage» «term» «time» «title» «unclear»

**figures:** «figure» «formula» «table»

**header:** «biblFull»

**iso-fs:** «fLib» «fs» «fvLib»

**linking:** «alt» «altGrp» «anchor» «join» «joinGrp» «link» «linkGrp» «seg» «timeline»

*Declaration*

```

element titlePart
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute type { "main" | "sub" | "alt" | "short" | "desc" | xsd:Name }?,
  macro.paraContent}

```

*Example* <docTitle xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"

```

xmlns:ns551="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
<titlePart type="main">THE FORTUNES
AND MISFORTUNES Of the FAMOUS
Moll Flanders, &c.
</titlePart>
<titlePart type="desc">Who was BORN in NEWGATE,
And during a Life of continu'd Variety for
Threescore Years, besides her Childhood, was
Twelve Year a <hi>Whore</hi>, five times a <hi>Wife</hi> (wherof
once to her own Brother) Twelve Year a <hi>Thief,</hi>
Eight Year a Transported <hi>Felon</hi> in <hi>Virginia</hi>,
at last grew <hi>Rich</hi>, liv'd <hi>Honest</hi>, and died a
<hi>Penitent</hi>.</titlePart>
</docTitle>

```

**<titleStmt>** (title statement) groups information about the title of a work and those responsible for its intellectual content.

*Module* header

Used by «biblFull» «fileDesc»

May contain

core: «author» «editor» «meeting» «respStmt» «title»

header: «funder» «principal» «sponsor»

Declaration

```
element titleStmt { att.global.attributes, ( title+, model.respLike* ) }
```

*Example* `<titleStmt xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns553="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">  
<title>Capgrave's Life of St. John Norbert: a machine-readable transcription</title>  
<respStmt>  
<resp>compiled by</resp>  
<name>P.J. Lucas</name>  
</respStmt>  
</titleStmt>`

**<tok>** mte: *token* represents stretch of analysed text (segments, words, punctuation symbols), possibly together with a linguistic analysis.

Module analysis

Used by «model.segLike»

May contain

analysis: «ana» «c» «w»

linking: «seg»

Declaration

```
element tok { att.global.attributes, ( w | c | seg )+, ana* }
```

**<trailer>** contains a closing title or footer appearing at the end of a division of a text.

Module textstructure

Used by «model.divBottomPart»

May contain

analysis: «S» «ana» «c» «m» «pc» «phr» «s» «span» «tok» «w»

core: «abbr» «add» «address» «binaryObject» «cb» «choice» «corr» «date» «del» «distinct» «email» «emph» «expan» «foreign» «gap» «gloss» «graphic» «hi» «lb» «measure» «measureGrp» «mentioned» «milestone» «name» «note» «num» «orig» «pb» «ptr» «ref» «reg» «rs» «sic» «soCalled» «term» «time» «title» «unclear»

figures: «figure» «formula»

iso-fs: «fLib» «fs» «fvLib»

linking: «alt» «altGrp» «anchor» «join» «joinGrp» «link» «linkGrp» «seg» «timeline»

Declaration

```
element trailer { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```

*Example* <trailer xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns555="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">Explicit pars tertia</trailer>

**<unclear>** contains a word, phrase, or passage which cannot be transcribed with certainty because it is illegible or inaudible in the source.

*Module* core

*Used by* «model.pPart.transcriptional» «model.choicePart»

*May contain*

**analysis:** «S» «ana» «c» «m» «pc» «phr» «s» «span» «tok» «w»

**core:** «abbr» «add» «address» «bibl» «biblStruct» «binaryObject» «cb» «choice» «cit» «corr» «date» «del» «desc» «distinct» «email» «emph» «expan» «foreign» «gap» «gloss» «graphic» «hi» «label» «lb» «list» «listBibl» «measure» «measureGrp» «mentioned» «milestone» «name» «note» «num» «orig» «pb» «ptr» «q» «quote» «ref» «reg» «rs» «said» «sic» «soCalled» «stage» «term» «time» «title» «unclear»

**figures:** «figure» «formula» «table»

**header:** «biblFull»

**iso-fs:** «fLib» «fs» «fvLib»

**linking:** «alt» «altGrp» «anchor» «join» «joinGrp» «link» «linkGrp» «seg» «timeline»

*Declaration*

```

element unclear
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  attribute reason
  {
    list { token { pattern = "(\\p{L}|\\p{N}|\\p{P}|\\p{S})+" }+ }
  }?,
  attribute hand { xsd:anyURI }?,
  attribute agent { xsd:Name }?,
  macro.paraContent}

```

*Note* The same element is used for all cases of uncertainty in the transcription of element content, whether for written or spoken material. For other aspects of certainty, uncertainty, and reliability of tagging and transcription, see chapter «CE». The <damage>, <gap>, <del>, <unclear> and <supplied> elements may be closely allied in use. See section «PHCOMB» for discussion of which element is appropriate for which circumstance.

**<vAlt>** (value alternation) represents the value part of a feature-value specification which contains a set of values, only one of which can be valid.

*Module* iso-fs

*Used by* «model.featureVal.single»

*May contain*

**iso-fs:** «fs» «numeric» «string» «symbol» «vAlt» «vColl» «vLabel»

*Declaration*

```

element vAlt
{

```

```

    att.global.attributes,
    ( ( model.featureVal ), model.featureVal+ )
}

```

*Example* `<f name="gender" xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns559="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">`  
`<vAlt>`  
`<symbol value="masculine"/>`  
`<symbol value="neuter"/>`  
`<symbol value="feminine"/>`  
`</vAlt>`  
`</f>`

**<vColl>** (collection of values) represents the value part of a feature-value specification which contains multiple values organized as a set, bag, or list.

*Module* iso-fs

*Used by* «ana»«model.featureVal.complex»

*May contain*

**iso-fs:** «fs» «numeric» «string» «symbol» «vAlt» «vLabel»

*Declaration*

```

element vColl
{
    att.global.attributes,
    attribute org { "set" | "bag" | "list" }?,
    ( ( fs | model.featureVal.single ) * )
}

```

*Example* `<f name="name" xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns560="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">`  
`<vColl>`  
`<string>Jean</string>`  
`<string>Luc</string>`  
`<string>Godard</string>`  
`</vColl>`  
`</f>`

*Example* `<fs xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema" xmlns:ns560="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">`  
`<f name="lex">`  
`<symbol value="auxquels"/>`  
`</f>`  
`<f name="maf">`  
`<vColl org="list">`  
`<fs>`  
`<f name="cat">`  
`<symbol value="prep"/>`  
`</f>`  
`</fs>`  
`<fs>`  
`<f name="cat">`  
`<symbol value="pronoun"/>`  
`</f>`  
`<f name="kind">`

```

    <symbol value="rel"/>
  </f>
  <f name="num">
    <symbol value="pl"/>
  </f>
  <f name="gender">
    <symbol value="masc"/>
  </f>
</fs>
</vColl>
</f>
</fs>

```

**<vLabel>** (value label) represents the value part of a feature-value specification which appears at more than one point in a feature structure.

*Module* iso-fs

*Used by* «model.featureVal.single»

*May contain*

iso-fs: «fs» «numeric» «string» «symbol» «vAlt» «vColl» «vLabel»

*Declaration*

```

element vLabel
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute name { token { pattern = "(\\p{L}|\\p{N}|\\p{P}|\\p{S})+" } },
  model.featureVal?
}

```

*Example*

```

<fs xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"
xmlns:ns562="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <f name="nominal">
    <fs>
      <f name="nm-num">
        <vLabel name="L1">
          <symbol value="singular"/>
        </vLabel>
      </f>
    <!-- other nominal features -->
  </fs>
</f>
<f name="verbal">
  <fs>
    <f name="vb-num">
      <vLabel name="L1"/>
    </f>
  </fs>
  <!-- other verbal features -->
</f>
</fs>

```

**<vRange>** (value range) defines the range of allowed values for a feature, in the form of an <fs>, <vAlt>, or primitive value; for the value of an <f> to be valid, it must be subsumed by the



specified range; if the <f> contains multiple values (as sanctioned by the **org** attribute), then each value must be subsumed by the <vRange>.

*Module* iso-fs

*Used by* «fDecl»

*May contain*

**iso-fs:** «fs» «numeric» «string» «symbol» «vAlt» «vColl» «vLabel»

*Declaration*

```
element vRange { att.global.attributes, model.featureVal }
```

*Example* `<fDecl name="INV" xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"
xmlns:ns564="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
<fDescr>inverted sentence</fDescr>
<vRange>
<vAlt>
<binary value="true"/>
<binary value="false"/>
</vAlt>
</vRange>
<vDefault>
<binary value="false"/>
</vDefault>
</fDecl>`

*Note* May contain any legal feature-value specification.

**<W>** (word) represents a grammatical (not necessarily orthographic) word.

*Module* analysis

*Used by* «tok» «w»«model.segLike»

*May contain*

**analysis:** «c» «m» «span» «w»

**core:** «abbr» «add» «cb» «choice» «corr» «del» «expan» «gap» «hi» «lb» «milestone»  
«note» «orig» «pb» «reg» «sic» «unclear»

**figures:** «figure»

**iso-fs:** «fLib» «fs» «fvLib»

**linking:** «alt» «altGrp» «anchor» «join» «joinGrp» «link» «linkGrp» «seg» «timeline»

*Declaration*

```
element w
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.segLike.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  attribute lemma { string }?,
  attribute lemmaRef { xsd:anyURI }?,
  (
    text
    | model.gLike      | seg      | w      | m      | c      | model.global      | model.lPar
  )
}
```

```

Example <w
  type="verb"
  lemma="hit"
  lemmaRef="http://www.example.com/lexicon/hitvb.xml"
  xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"
  xmlns:ns566="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">hitt<m type="suffix">ing</m>
</w>

```

**<when/>** indicates a point in time either relative to other elements in the same timeline tag, or absolutely.

*Module linking*

*Used by* «timeline»

*May contain* Empty element

*Declaration*

```

element when
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute absolute
  {
    xsd:date
    | xsd:gYear
    | xsd:gMonth
    | xsd:gDay
    | xsd:gYearMonth
    | xsd:gMonthDay
    | xsd:time
    | xsd:dateTime
  }?,
  attribute unit { "d" | "h" | "min" | "s" | "ms" | xsd:Name }?,
  attribute interval { xsd:float { minExclusive = "0" } | "unknown" }?,
  attribute since { xsd:anyURI }?,
  empty
}

```

```

Example <when xml:id="TW3" interval="20" since="#w2"
  xmlns:mte="http://nl.ijs.si/ME/schema"
  xmlns:ns569="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0"/>

```

*Note* On this element, the global **xml:id** attribute must be supplied to specify an identifier for this point in time. The value used may be chosen freely provided that it is unique within the document and is a syntactically valid name. There is no requirement for values containing numbers to be in sequence.